



## Chapter 33

**Avestan and Old Persian Morphology****Prods Oktor Skjærvø**

Harvard University

**0. General introduction**

Three Old Iranian languages are known from texts: Old and Young Avestan and Old Persian. Avestan is the language of the *Avesta*, the sacred book of the Zoroastrians. The *Avesta* is a collection of mostly ritual texts that was composed orally at two different periods in the 2nd and 1st millennia B.C.E. As the spoken language changed, the *Avesta* was “crystallized” as sacred texts, which were then orally transmitted for over a thousand years before they were committed to writing some time in the Sasanian period (ca. 240–651 C.E.).<sup>1</sup>

Old Persian is known from royal inscriptions from the Achaemenid period (549–330), the earliest of which is the Behistun (Bisitun) inscription by Darius I from ca. 520 B.C.E. Old Persian was probably spoken by the Iranian tribes who migrated into western Iran around the beginning of the 1st millennium B.C.E. and finally settled in Fars (OP *Pārsa*) in southern Iran, replacing the Median (Iranian) and Elamite (non-Iranian) rulers in the area; it is the ancestor of Middle Persian and modern Persian (Farsi). The inscriptions are written in a cuneiform script that was probably invented under Darius for the purpose of recording his deeds. In the latest inscriptions the language has already changed to a post-Old Persian or pre-Middle Persian form, as we can see from the use of “wrong” endings (from an Old Persian point of view) and various other non-Old Persian forms.<sup>2</sup> Old Persian must therefore have been spoken for a few centuries before the first inscriptions and probably throughout most of the first half of the first millennium B.C.E.

Beside Old Persian and Avestan other Iranian languages must have been spoken in the 1st millennium before our era. Median, which was spoken in western Iran and presumably was the “official” language during the Median period (ca. 700–522), known from numerous loanwords in Old Persian, had important phonological isoglosses in common with Avestan, rather than Old Persian. The Median words are not, however, restricted to technical terminology such as administration, but are from all parts of the lexicon (Schmitt 2003). Sometimes both Median and Old Persian forms are found. It is also possible that Old Persian had assimilated elements from Avestan. A small, but important, part of the Old Persian vocabulary is

*Supplemental abbreviations* unique to this essay are found on p. 906.

1. See Kellens 1998, Vaan 2003: 8–9, and Skjærvø 2003–4 for recent evaluations of the transmission.

2. See Schmitt 1999 for a complete inventory.

known only from Elamite texts, including grammatical forms otherwise unknown in Old Persian (Hinz 1975).

### **0.1. Old and Young Avestan**

Avestan falls into two chronologically distinct layers: Old Avestan and Young(er) Avestan. The *Old Avesta* comprises the five *Gāθās* ‘songs’ and the *Yasna Haptaŋhāiti* ‘the sacrifice in seven sections’. The remaining Avestan texts are all Young Avestan. Among these latter we distinguish between Young Avestan texts composed with consistent and mostly correct grammar and texts compiled at a stage when Young Avestan was no longer a living language and the authors and compilers only had an incomplete knowledge of it.<sup>3</sup> The *Young Avesta* contains several geographical names from the area of modern Afghanistan and the Central Asian Republics, and Young Avestan probably was a local language in that area.

Several phonological and morphological isoglosses separate Old Avestan and Young Avestan, which means that they are not simply different stages of the same language. It is not probable, however, that they were contemporaneous languages, as argued recently by I. Gershevitch (1995); the morphologies of the two languages, which compare to those of Old Indic and Old Persian, respectively, rule out such a possibility (Skjærvø 2003–4).

Compared with Old Avestan, Young Avestan represents a changed (or different) form of the language, especially in phonology, but also in morphology and syntax:

- The verbal system of Old Avestan is still based upon the opposition present : aorist : perfect known from Vedic and Homeric Greek, while in Young Avestan the aorist and perfect have both become relatively rare, and the verbal system is based upon the opposition present : imperfect-injunctive.

- In Old Avestan, the ablative singular is identical with the genitive except in the *a*-declension, while in Young Avestan and Old Persian the ablative marker of the *a*-stems has been transferred to the other declensions, as well.

- Young Avestan and Old Persian have developed a pronominal stem *dī-*, replacing the Old Avestan stem *i-* (in Old Persian the Avestan stem *hi-* has been replaced by *ši-*).

- In Old Avestan, *hīiaŋ* is both a relative pronoun and a conjunction, while in Young Avestan *hīiaŋ* is a relative pronoun and *yaŋ* a conjunction.

- Old Avestan has no trace of the pronominal inflection of “pronominal” adjectives, while Young Avestan uses pronominal endings (see §3.6). This point is routinely quoted to prove that Old Avestan and Young Avestan are also different dialects, not merely different stages of the same

3. The corpus of Young Avesta contains the *Yasna*, *Vispered*, *Xorda Avesta* (Little Avesta), the *yašts* (hymns to deities), *Videvdad* (*Widēwdād*, *Vendidad*, a book of purification rituals), *Hērbedistān* and *Nirangistān* (texts concerned with religious practice), and the small texts *Aogamadaēca* and *Hādōxt nask* (concerned mainly with eschatological issues), the *Pursišnihā* (a catechism), the *Frahang ī ōim* (a list of Avestan words and their Pahlavi/Middle Persian translations), plus a few other texts. For editions, see Kellens 1988.

language; there is, however, only one example: OAv. *vispārhō* ‘all’ (three times) ~ YAv. *vīspe*, and the masc. nom. pl. forms in *\*-āhah* were stylistic alternatives for any other masc. nom. pl. form; cf. OP *aniyāha* ‘other’, but *vi-saiy* ‘all’, so Old Avestan may well have had forms such as *\*vispē* and *\*aniiē*;

- Among the phonological differences the most important is the spirantization of voiced stops in Young Avestan, which produced pairs such as the proto-Iranian 2nd pl. mid. ending *\*dūam* > OAv. *\*-duuēm* > *dūm*, but YAv. *-δβəm* (with *μ* assimilated to the preceding spirant).

On the whole, Young Avestan is linguistically closer to Old Persian than to Old Avestan, and it is possible that the developments shared by the two had taken place before the Old Persian tribes migrated westward about the turn of the millennium (Skjærvø 2003–4).

## 0.2. Young Avestan dialects

Various phonological and morphological features of Young Avestan have been ascribed to dialect differences. For instance, J. Schindler (1982) interpreted the different treatments of final *\*aṛh* (< Ilr. *\*-ans*) in terms of dialects, and K. Hoffmann theorized Arachotian elements, among them *hū* > *xʷ* instead of *huu-* and *VβV* > *VμV* (Hoffmann and Forssman 1996: §§6.2, 63cg). Note also the alternation *VδV* ~ *VθV*, for instance, in *daδā-* ~ *daθā-*, which superficially at least corresponds to Manichean Middle Persian *day-* versus Parthian and modern Persian *dah-*. Other features ascribed to dialects are forms like *dahāka-* (not *\*daṛhāka-*) and the “stunted” genitives *zraiiā vouru.kašaiia* ‘the Vourukasha sea’ (Y 65.4 = Yt. 5.4 = Yt. 8.31) beside correct *zraiiarhō vouru.kašahe* (Yt. 5.42) (see also Beekes 1999: 63).

The main problem with such theories is that we still do not have an exhaustive study of the manuscripts and individual scribal habits or of the formal aspects of the Avestan corpus. It is therefore a dangerous procedure to glean forms from a wide spectrum of texts and manuscripts and treat them as if the text corpus were uniform and the forms all equally reliable.

Syntactical differences might carry more weight; for instance, in the *Videvdad* the expression ‘but if (on the other hand)’ is *āaṭ yezi*, but in the *Nirangistan* it is *yezi āaṭ*, which agrees with the use of OAv. *aṭ* in second position. These features have not yet been studied, however.

## 0.3. The Avestan text

The extant text of the *Avesta* is an “edited” text and does not necessarily in every detail reflect a genuine linguistic system. For centuries, during the oral transmission of the text, editors (*diascevast*s) worked to standardize it, and afterwards it was modified by scribes who spoke dialects or languages with phonological systems differing from that of the original Avestan languages. Thus, on one hand, the Old Avestan texts contain many elements that are clearly borrowed from or influenced by Young Avestan, and, on the other hand, the Young Avestan texts contain both elements that are imitations of Old Avestan (pseudo-OAv.)<sup>4</sup> and elements belonging to later stages of Iranian that were probably introduced by the scribes. This makes

4. Some of these may be fragments of genuine Old Avestan texts (see Pirart 1992).

it almost impossible to determine which of the sound changes that we observe in our extant manuscripts belonged to the original language and which ones were introduced at various stages of the 1,000–1,500 years' oral and written transmission of the texts.

The earliest manuscripts of the Avesta are from the 13th and 14th centuries (*Vispered* ms. K7a: 1278?, *Yasna* mss. J2 and K5: 1323, *Videvdad* mss. K1: 1324, L4: 1323, *Xorde Av.* ms. Jm4: 1352), and, from the evidence of the manuscript colophons, all go back to single manuscripts for each part of the Avesta (*Yasna*, *Yašts*, etc.) that were in existence around 1000 C.E. Most manuscripts of the Avesta are much later, however, and for some parts of the text the manuscript tradition does not go beyond the 16th–18th centuries (see Kellens 1998). This situation always has to be kept in mind when we discuss the Avestan language.

The Avestan text most often quoted, also for grammatical purposes, is that prepared by K. F. Geldner (1896). This edition is a “critical” edition in the sense that Geldner set out to list all—or at least all the most important—manuscript variants known to him. Since manuscripts reached him from various places at various times during the preparation of the edition, it is not a complete critical edition, however; it does not even include all the texts known in Geldner's time.<sup>5</sup>

For similar reasons, at the outset of the edition, Geldner did not yet have a clear idea of the relative importance of the manuscripts; this was formed only during the work and finally codified in the introduction to the final edition. Geldner therefore took as his primary standard the conventions of the previous edition, that of N. L. Westergaard (1852–54), which in turn was based primarily upon the Copenhagen manuscript collection. One of the implications of this is that Geldner's edition cannot be used directly as the basis for grammatical analysis (orthography, phonology, morphology). In fact, a new edition is sorely needed, one that includes an analysis of the manuscripts together with a reevaluation of the manuscripts (families, interferences, chronology, individual scribal habits) and rereading of the ones still available.<sup>6</sup>

#### **0.4. The “Arsacid Avesta” and the Andreas theory**

A theory was developed in the early twentieth century by F. C. Andreas (first in Andreas 1904) that the Avesta was written down in the Arsacid (Parthian) period (ca. 250 B.C.E.–ca. 240 C.E.) in an Aramaic consonant alphabet and that unusual or unexpected spellings in the transmitted text reflected erroneous vocalizations and wrong interpretation of ambivalent consonant signs on the part of the Sasanian transcribers. It was proved, however, by G. Morgenstierne (1942) that the “aberrant” orthography of the Avesta reflects a wholly consistent phonological system. Morgenstierne showed that the system of epenthesis, for instance, is internally consistent

5. For manuscript abbreviations and descriptions, see the “Prolegomena” to Geldner's edition.

6. Authors of modern text editions and grammatical studies are becoming increasingly aware of this necessity.

and must therefore be a genuine linguistic phenomenon. The theory held hard, however, and was still applied, for instance, by Hoffmann (1958), but now it has been wholly abandoned.

### 0.5. Editorial interference and scribal errors

The text was deliberately changed by editors, as demonstrated by the repetition of preverbs in *tmesis* in Old Avestan, e.g.: *nī aēšmō nī.diiātəm pa'tī rəməm pa'tī.siiōdūm* 'let wrath be tied down, let obstruction be cut back!' (Y 48.7), where the meter shows that the repeated preverbs were not original. Deliberate changes are also evident in various orthographic ideosyncrasies, the most important of which is the introduction of final *-ō* (1) in the first member of compounds (cf., beside the expected form *ahuraδāta-* 'established by Ahura [Mazdā]', the much more common type *daēuuō.dāta-* 'established by demons', *bayō.baxta-* 'assigned by the assigner', etc.); (2) at morphological junctures, e.g., comparatives and superlatives in *-ō.tara-* and *-ō.tama-*; (3) in nouns in *-tāt-* (OAv. *karapō.tāt-* 'the title of mumbler'); and (4) especially in cases of false division: YAv. *uziio.rəntəm* < *uziīar-* 'come up', *\*hispo.səntē* < *hispas-* 'watch', *aš<sup>o</sup>θβō.zgatəma-* < *\*aš.θβazga-* '?', *vīmanō.hiia-* < *vīmanahiia-* 'agnosticism(?)'; *parō.katarštəma-* < *\*paraka.tarštəma-* 'most feared by the other side(?)'; *parō.kəuuiδ(a)-* < *\*paraka.viδ(a)-* 'piercing distant (targets)'; *raṛō.mana-* < *ramrəmana-* 'at peace(?)' (Yt. 13.29, mss. *raṛaomanō* F1; *raṛō.manō* J10, *Xorde Avesta* mss.); note also *pañcā.saduuar-* < *pañcāsa* & *duuar-* 'having fifty doors(?)'. The *-ō* in the morphological juncture in forms like OAv. *gūšō.dūm* is probably a reinterpretation of forms with *u*-umlaut (*\*adūm* > *-ōdūm*), and the *-ō* in OAv. *drəguuō.d<sup>o</sup>biiō* < *drəguuañt-* 'full of deception' is a reinterpretation of forms with labialization. Other cases of false division include *gəuš.āiš* for *gəušāiš* 'with the ears'.

Another editorial practice was the restoration of non-sandhi forms in sandhi: e.g., *-š.h-* for *-š-* before vowel (*a<sup>i</sup>βiš.huta-* 'filtered, pressed', *ārma'tiš.hāg<sup>o</sup>t* 'following [Lifegiving] Humility', *pasuš.ha<sup>u</sup>ruua-* 'cattle-guardian') and *-š-* for *-ž-* before voiced consonant (*xšuuuš.gāiia-* instead of *\*xšuuušgāiia-* 'distance of six steps', cf. *dužgañti-*).

Less commonly stops, affricates, and *m* were analyzed as two consonants, e.g., OAv. intervocalic *t* > *t.t* (*gaṭ.tōi*, *gaṭ.tē* 'to go', *āgəmaṭ.tā* 'come'); YAv. *c* [tš] > *t.c* (*frātaṭ.caiiaṭ* for *\*frātacaiia-* 'flow forth', *arənaṭ.cāšəsa-* for *\*arənacāšəsa-* 'who assigns blame[?]', and OAv. *m* > *m.m* (*həməmiiāsa'tē*, *həmə.miiāsa'tē* for *\*həməmiiāsa'tē* 'is being steered'; *aēšəm.mahiiā* for *aēšəmahiiā* 'wrath's').

Scribal errors abound, many of which are obvious, but some of which have been regarded as genuine linguistic forms and have played a role in grammatical descriptions, for instance, *ziiānim*, acc. sg. of *ziiāni-* 'harm', on the basis of the manuscript reading *ziiāñenim*, which, however, is a scribal error for *ziēnim* (Hoffmann 1975–92: 2.513–15).

### 0.6. What do grammars of Old Iranian describe?

In view of these characteristics of the extant Avestan text it is clear that it in no way can it be assumed to represent actually spoken languages, and,

consequently, any description of the Avestan languages based upon this text will also not be of actually spoken languages. Let us sum up:

1. At the time the sacred text became “crystallized,” it probably represented a language no longer spoken by that current generation.
2. The oral transmission took place over a large territory, and we do not know from which local traditions the extant texts have come to us, which may all have left their inprints on the text in form of dialect features.
3. The oral transmission went on for hundreds of years, and we do not know to what extent phonological and grammatical features may reflect the languages of the transmitters rather than the original languages.
4. The last (Sasanian) oral transmitters no longer knew the “correct” text and would substitute common grammatical forms for less common ones (e.g., thematic for athematic forms) and insert passages they knew in places where they did not belong, upsetting the grammar (e.g., entire phrases in the nom. pl. instead of acc.) and the context.
5. Inferior oral tradition influenced the written tradition.

It is the result of these processes that the grammar of Avestan must describe, and it is therefore clear that what is most needed is an up-to-date taxonomy of the language and that descriptive models developed for living languages are not adequate for the purpose. The most serious consequence of this situation is that no exact phonemic analysis of the two Avestan languages is possible, since it is a concept presupposing the possibility of capturing an actual linguistic state.

Under these circumstances some scholars have chosen to describe a reconstructed (or phonemical), “corrected,” version of the text (as in Duchesne-Guillemin 1936 and Beekes 1988). Interesting as such attempts may be, they do not provide a description of the language seen in the texts and are of little use to students at any level.

As for Old Persian, quite aside from the smallness of the corpus, two features need to be kept in mind:

1. The lateness of the language of the inscriptions in the history of Old Persian warns against forcing phonetic and grammatical forms too much into an Old Iranian mold; instead one should consider Old Persian as intermediate between the Old Iranian and the Middle Iranian language types (Skjærvø 1999a: 158–61).
2. The mixed-language type prevents us from grasping the genuine SW-Iranian phonological system.

### **0.7. Spelling conventions**

Several features of Avestan and Old Persian orthography affect the interpretation of the morphological data. In Old Avestan, all final vowels are long, but in Young Avestan they are short, except in monosyllables. In Old Avestan, *i* and *u* before *-m* are regularly written long in the mss. (*-īm*, *-ūm*)

but, apparently, short or long according to their etymology before -š (-šš, -šš̄). In Young Avestan, however, the length distinctions have apparently been lost and new distributional patterns created, which have not been studied.<sup>7</sup> In standard transcriptions, with a few exceptions, *i* and *ū* are preferred in these cases. Here, I have left length in the Old Avestan examples more or less as in the mss., but in the Young Avestan examples I have used *ī* and *ū* (though probably not consistently) to emphasize the non-etymological value of the manuscript spellings.

Similarly, for proto-Ir. \*-am, OP -am, OAv. usually has -əm, but -ēam in monosyllables, occasionally elsewhere. Rhythmic or syllabic principles may be involved (cf. the expression *narēam narēam* 'man by man' and *drūjēam* verse-final or before one consonant in *drūjēam dii-*, but *drūjēam* before a vowel). Young Avestan has only -əm.

OP final -ā is from proto-Iranian \*-a, \*-ā, or \*-āC, while final -a is from proto-Iranian \*-aC. The Old Persian orthography does not distinguish between short or long *ī* and *ū* (non-final *ī* is written <i> or <u-v>; in final position they are written <-i-y, -u-v>. After *h*, *i* (and *ī*?) is not usually written in Darius's inscriptions, but frequently in those of Xerxes.

In Old Persian, *h* is often missing where it is expected by etymology, e.g., Ir. *hu-*, OP <u-v>; Ir. *a<sup>h</sup>mi* = OP *a<sup>h</sup>miy* <a-m-i-y>, but also *ahmiy* <a-h-m-i-y>; Ir. *-ahi* = OP <-h-y> or <-h-i-y>; Ir. *ahi* = OP <a-i>, etc. Original final consonants are missing, notably the common endings -*h*, -*t*, and -*n*. In transcriptions these "missing" letters are often added as subscripts (e.g., *abara<sup>h</sup>*, *abara<sup>t</sup>*, *abara<sup>n</sup>* 'carried', *a<sup>h</sup>miy* 'I am') to show the etymology of grammatical forms and their relationship with Avestan forms, though most of them probably had no phonetic value.

In the description that follows I have sometimes cited morphemes in their proto-Iranian phonemic form, both for the sake of clarity and to save space, e.g., *ī*, *ū* = Av. *ii*, *uu*, OP *iy*, *uv*; \*-*ai*, \*-*au* = Av. -ē, -aē°, -uuō, -ao°, OP -*aiy*, -*auv*; \*-*ah* = Av. -ō, -as°, OP -*a<sup>h</sup>*; etc.

I have also followed the practice of writing epenthetic and anaptyctic vowels superscript to make the forms clearer.<sup>8</sup>

## 1. The morphology of Avestan: General remarks

The Avestan and Old Persian systems of declensions and conjugations are still of the Indo-Iranian type, involving a variety of stems, genders, numbers, cases, etc. Because of the limited material, especially Old Persian, the forms are not as well known as for Old Indic: some declensions and conjugations are known from only a few forms, sometimes only a single form. In unfavorable instances the Avestan manuscript tradition is so poor that

7. Since this article was submitted, this has now been done (Vaan 2003); I apologize for not being able to update this article to reflect these new insights.

8. Epenthetic vowels are *i* and *u* written before a palatalized or labialized consonant, e.g., *pa<sup>i</sup>ti* < \**pati*, *ha<sup>u</sup>ruua* < \**haruā* 'entire'. Anaptyctic vowels are inserted between consonants to "ease" the pronunciation, e.g., OAv. *d<sup>ə</sup>bāuuaiia* 'deceive', *azd<sup>ə</sup>bīš* < *ast* 'bone', *pa<sup>a</sup>-tarēam* 'father'. Here, I have omitted the epenthetic *i* in *anii* (not *a<sup>i</sup>nii*), but kept it in *a<sup>i</sup>mī*.

the correct forms cannot be determined (e.g., gen.-dat. sg. of *jaini-* 'woman': *janiiaoš* or *janiīōiš*).

The morphological categories are the same in all three Old Iranian languages, but with some individual modifications, such as the Young Avestan and Old Persian marking of the abl. sg. in all declensions; the merger of the gen. and dat. (loss of dat. forms) and ins. and abl. in Old Persian; the development in Young Avestan and Old Persian of an augmented optative to denote repetition in the past (cf. Eng. 'he would do').

### 1.1. Allomorphy (morpho-phonology)

Avestan and, to a lesser extent, Old Persian are characterized by numerous morphophonological variants, which make especially the Avestan morphology very irregular. There are two principal kinds of variants, those due to diachronical developments and those due to analogy. Some of these developed in (or before) Indo-Iranian, some in Proto-Iranian, and some in Avestan and/or Old Persian only. The most important are:

- The Indo-European ablaut-system affected vowels of roots and stem morphemes and initial and final consonants of roots (e.g., stop ~ palatal).
- Proto-Iranian consonant changes affected consonants at morpheme borders.
- Avestan palatalization and labialization affected the vowels of roots and endings.
- Median forms in Old Persian.

### 1.2. Ablaut

The original ablaut was basically  $\bar{a} \sim a \sim \text{nil}$ , and in diphthongs, e.g.,  $\bar{a}i \sim ai \sim i$ , occasionally  $\bar{i}\bar{a} \sim \bar{i}a \sim i$ . In Indo-Iranian, the original ablaut is obscured by various sound developments:

- Brugmann's Law, by which an IE *o* in an open syllable became  $\bar{a}$ , coinciding with the long grade
- The disappearance of a post-vocalic laryngeal (*H*), by which *aH* before a consonant  $> \bar{a}$  and *H* between vowels was lost, leaving a hiatus
- The frequent changes in Avestan in vowel quantity caused by stress shifts (?), which caused long  $\bar{a}$  to be shortened:  $\bar{a}p\bar{e}m$  'water' ~  $ap\bar{e}mca$  and  $\bar{a}p\bar{o}$  (nom.) and  $ap\bar{o}$  (acc.) ~  $apasca$  (nom., acc.); and short *a* to be lengthened:  $kauuai\bar{o}$  'poet priests' ~  $k\bar{a}uuaiisc\bar{a}$ ;  $a\check{s}im$  'reward' ~  $\bar{a}r^{o}timca$  (*Pursiš-nihā* 39; beside common  $a\check{s}imca$ )

The Old Iranian reflexes of the ablaut are set out in table 1 (tables begin on p. 910).

Avestan often has full grades in initial position where Old Indic has zero grade: *ya-* for *i-* (Av. *yašta-* 'sacrificed', OInd. *iṣṭá-*) and *va-* for *u-* and *uH-* (Av. *vaziia-* 'be led', OInd. *uhyá-*; Av. *var<sup>o</sup>z-* 'invigorate', OInd. *ūrj-*). Note also the distribution of initial \**r-* and *ra-* in  $\bar{e}r^{o}ta-$  ( $a\check{s}a-$  '[cosmic] order'), etc., but *ratu-* '(cosmic) model'; adjective OAv.  $\bar{e}r^{o}\theta\beta a-$ , YAv.  $ra\theta\beta iia-$  'in agreement with the models', which correspond to OInd.  $\check{r}tá-$  and  $\check{r}tú-$ ,  $\check{r}tvíya-$ . Since there is no good reason why Av. should have changed \* $\bar{e}r^{o}t-$  to *rat-* only in *ratu-*, it would seem that *ratu-* is the original form, which was changed in analogy with the other forms in Old Indic.



We also occasionally find Ir. *ai* and *au* where Old Indic has long *ī* and *ū* (Av. *aēšā-* ‘plow’, OInd. *īṣā-*; OP *gaudaya-* ‘hide’, Av. *gūzaiia-*, OInd. *gūhaya-*), a development that at least *appears* to be parallel to that of \**ṛH* > Ir. *ar* (OInd. *īr*, *ūr*).

Avestan also has ambikinetic and holokinetic ablaut types:

*dā<sup>h</sup>r-u* ‘tree, wood’ ~ in compounds °*dr-u-*, loc. sg. *drao°*, gen. sg. *dr-aoš*  
*ja<sup>h</sup>ṇ-ti* ‘he smashes’ ~ 3rd pl. *ṇn-aṇti* ‘they smash’, pptc. *jata-  
 stao-mi* ‘I listen’ ~ 3rd pl. *stuu-aṇti*.  
*paṇtā* (< \**pantaH-s*) ‘road’ ~ gen. sg./acc./pl. *paθō* (< \**pṇtH-as*)

According to their vowel grade, stems are commonly classified as:

- “Strong” stems = with (1) long or (2) full grade, e.g.: nom, acc. sg., nom. pl. of athematic nouns, pres. ind. sg. of athematic verbs
- “Weak” stems = with (1) full or (2) zero grade, e.g., gen. sg., acc., gen. pl. of athematic nouns; pres. ind. pl. of athematic verbs

The proto-Iranian long diphthongs *āi* and *āu* remained in Old Iranian. The short diphthongs \**ai* and \**au* remained in Old Persian, but underwent numerous modifications in Avestan:

	* <i>ai</i>		* <i>au</i>	
	internal	final	internal	final
OAv.	aē, ōi, ēi, əuui	-ē, -aē°	əu, ao	-ao(?), -uuō
YAv.	aē, ōi	-e	ao (əu)	-uuō, -ao°
OP	ai	-ai	au	-auv

Final -*ē* from \**ai* palatalizes preceding consonants, e.g., \**ahai* > *aḥhe* (in this description I use the symbol -*iē*, -*ie* < \**ai*). Note especially the development of -*uai* > -*uiē* > postconsonantal -*uiiē*, postvocalic -*uue*, -*oe* (e.g., \**iauai* > *yauee*, *yaoe*), but before enclitic > -*uuāē*°.

The Avestan diphthongs *ai*, *ei*, etc., and *au*, *ou*, etc., are the result of palatalization and labialization (commonly transcribed as *a<sup>i</sup>*, *o<sup>u</sup>*, etc.). Av. *āi* and *āu* can be original or the result of palatalization and labialization (*ā<sup>i</sup>*, *ā<sup>u</sup>*).

### 1.3. Avestan vowel alternations

Of the other indigenous Avestan developments, those affecting *a* and *ā* are crucial for understanding the morphology. Among these, the two most important are:

1. Backing of *a* to the central position before nasals > ə or ē, which were further palatalized (> *i*) or labialized (> *u*) by preceding consonants
2. Umlaut, that is, fronting (palatalizing) of *a* and *ā* to *e* or *ē* before high front vowels, but only when preceded by a palatal consonant (*i*, *c*, *j*), and backing and rounding to *o* or *ō* before *u* and often in labial environment

The thematic vowel in nouns and verbs (including full-grade endings of athematic verbs) regularly undergoes the above phonetic changes, most consistently in Young Avestan, but also in Old Avestan.

*a* > *ə*, *ē*:

before *-m*:

in the final syllable *\*-am* > *-ǎm* (OAv. *drujǎm* ‘deception’, YAv. *ahurǎm* ‘lord’) and in the 1st sg. secondary ending (OAv. *°grabǎm* ‘I seized’, YAv. *°barǎm* ‘I carried’)

before *-n*:

in the final syllable *\*-an(t)* > *-ǎn* (OAv. *°jǎn* ‘he smashed’, YAv. *barǎn* ‘they carried’)

in the 3rd pl. endings *\*-anti*, *-antīe* > *-ǎnti*, *-ǎnte* (examples, see below) with the exceptions described below

*ə* > *i* (regularly in YAv., sporadically in OAv.):

regularly after *c* and *j* (YAv. *drujim*; *tacin*, *taciṅti* < *tac* ‘run, flow’)

after *ḷ* in *ḷa*-stems, but in verbal forms apparently restricted to the position after sibilants and *θ* (YAv. *mašim* < *mašīia* ‘mortal man’; *uxšin* < *uxšīia* ‘grow’; *ruuisiṅti* < *ruuisīia* ‘to turn’, *riθiṅt-* < *riθīia* ‘pass away’); otherwise, *-ianti* (*-iantī*) and *-iantīe* usually remain as *-iiēnti*, *-iiēnte*<sup>9</sup>

in the sequences *-aiam* > *-aēm*, *-aijan* > *-aēn* (*gaēm* < *gaiia* ‘life’; *cikaēn* < *cikaiia* ‘atone for’); *-āiam* > *-āim*, *-āijan* > *-āin* (*haxāim* < *haxaē-* ‘companion’; *gāruuāin* < *gāruuāīia* ‘seize’); (*-īam* >) *-īiam* > *-īim* (*°jīm* ‘living’), and *-aiajan* > *-aiiaēn* (*nidar°zaiiaēn* ‘let them chain’); for *-aēn*, more commonly, we find the uncontracted form *-aiiēn* (*apataiēn* ‘they used to go falling about’), which is also commonly substituted for *-aiiaēn*<sup>10</sup>

*ə* > *u*:

before *-n* and *-m*: regularly after *u* (*ho°rum* ‘whole’ < *\*haruam*), including *u* < *β* (*graom* < *\*grauam* < *\*graβa-* ‘handle’)

the sequences *-auam* > *-aom*, *-auan* > *-aon* (*haom* ‘own’; *baom*, *baon* ‘I/they became’); *-āuam* > *-āum*, *-āuan* > *-āun*; and (*-īam* >) *-īiam*, *-īūan* > *-īim*, *-īūn* (*°sūm* ‘vitalizing’; *bun* ‘they shall be’); instead of *-aom* and *-aon*, the manuscripts also have *-aum* and *-aun* (*kə°nāun* ‘they did’)

for *-(ā)uuaiṅti*, *-(ā)uuante*, *-(ā)uuanta*, the expected contractions *\*-aonṅti*/*-āunṅti*, etc., are not found (YAv. *bauuaiṅti* ‘they become’, etc.), with the exception of one example of *\*-auanta* > *-aunṅta* (YAv. *adāunṅta* ‘they chattered’ with *āu*, as commonly, substituted for *ao*), and the suffix *-ahuaṅt-* regularly > *-arjhuṅt-* (for which *-arj’haṅt-* is commonly found in the manuscripts)

*a* > *e*:

before *h*:

gen. sg. of *ḷa*-stems: *-iiehe* (YAv. *mašīiehe*)

2nd sg. act. and mid. and inf.: *-iahi* > *-iiehi* (OAv. *xšaiiehi* < *xšaiia-* ‘be in command’, YAv. *srāuuaiiehi* < *srāuuaiia-* ‘recite’); *-iahai* > *-iahē* >

9. Some of the oldest mss. (including Indian Pahlavi *Yasna* and Pahlavi *Videvdad*) often(?) have *-iia(i)ṅt-* instead of *-iieṅt-*.

10. Note *snāḍaiēn* for *\*snāīajan* from *\*snāīa-* (*snaiia-*) ‘wash’.

-*iehe*, -*ieḡhe* (YAv. *maniehe* < *maniiā-* 'think'; OAv. inf. *srāuuaiieḡhē*)

before *t*:

3rd sg. and pl. act./mid.: -*iatī* > -*iatī* > -*ie<sup>h</sup>ti*; -*iatāi* > -*iat<sup>h</sup>ē* > -*iete*<sup>11</sup>  
(OAv. *srāuuaiie<sup>h</sup>ti*, *dāiiētē* < *dāiia-* 'to place', *vašiiētē* < *vašiiā-* 'undulate')<sup>12</sup>

before *nt*: -*iantī* > -*ie<sup>h</sup>nti*, -*iant<sup>h</sup>ē* > -*iente*: *baiieṅtē* < *baiiā-* 'to fear'; *fšuiieṅtē* < *fšuiiaṅt-* 'husbandman'

in YAv after *i* in final position after *n*, *r*, *s*: -*ia* > -*e* (e.g., nom. sg. *na<sup>h</sup>re* < *na<sup>h</sup>riiā-* 'manly')

*a* > *ō*:

sometimes in OAv.: by *u*-umlaut (*vər<sup>o</sup>ziiō.tū<sup>o</sup>* < *vər<sup>o</sup>ziia-* 'produce', *vātōiiō.tū* < *vātaiia-* '?', *ābaxšō.huuā* < *ābaxša-* 'partake of', *gūšō.dūm* < *guša-* 'listen', *mazdāṅhō.dūm* < *mazdā-* 'place in one's mind', *pa<sup>h</sup>ti.siiōdūm* < *pa<sup>h</sup>ti.siiā-* 'cut back', *dīdrayžō.duiiē* < *dīdrayža-* 'wish to hold firmly'); in labial environment: *auuō.buuā<sup>h</sup>ti* 'will come down'; cf. *auuā* 'down', *uz<sup>o</sup>mōhī* '?' < \*-*mahi*. In Young Avestan, we sometimes find -*uuō* instead of -*uuā* (e.g., ins. sg. *bāzuuō* for *bāzuuā* < *bāzu-* 'arm')

*ā* > *ē*:

before *m* in OAv. *strēm* 'of the stars'; *xiiēm* 'I wish to be'; both these words are disyllabic, which shows that the process is post-Old Avestan

*ā* > *e*:

when preceded by *i* and followed by a nasal (*m*, *n*) and *i*, *i*, or *e*:

acc. sg. of *i*-stems (YAv. *ziiēnīm* < *ziiāni-*)

1st sg. ind./sbjv. -*iāmi*, -*iāni*, -*iān<sup>h</sup>ē* (< -*iānai*) > -*ie<sup>h</sup>mi*, -*ie<sup>h</sup>ni*, -*ie<sup>h</sup>ne* (YAv. *ja<sup>h</sup>ḡie<sup>h</sup>mi* 'I beseech', *zbaiie<sup>h</sup>mi* 'I invoke'; OAv. *aiie<sup>h</sup>ni* 'I shall go'; YAv. *ta<sup>h</sup>ruuāie<sup>h</sup>ni* 'I shall overcome'; *hācaiie<sup>h</sup>ne* 'I shall induce')

the forms in -*iiāmi*, -*iiāni* are sometimes retained/restored by analogy, especially in the vicinity of forms with regular -*āmi*, not preceded by *ii* (YAv. *yāsāmi* . . . *ja<sup>h</sup>ḡiiāmi* 'I request . . . I beseech', Y 65.11, and elsewhere)

#### 1.4. Consonant alternations

The consonant changes that affect the morphology of Old Iranian are of various ages: proto-Indo-Iranian, proto-Iranian, and later.

Among the proto-Indo-Iranian changes are the following:

- Palatalization of the velars *k*, *g*, *g<sup>h</sup>* > *č*, *ǰ*, *ǰ<sup>h</sup>* before front vowels and glides in Indo-Iranian; in proto-Ir., *ǰ* and *ǰ<sup>h</sup>* then merged into *ǰ* (*aogō* 'strength' ~ *aojaṅhā*, cf. Latin *genus* ~ *generis*, Greek *génos* ~ *géné<sup>h</sup>os*; OP *drauga-* 'deception' ~ *d<sup>h</sup>rujiya-* 'to lie' < \**drug-ǰā-*)

11. There seems to be a tendency to spell this ending without epenthesis, but no comprehensive survey of manuscript readings has been made.

12. But *aēnaḡhē<sup>h</sup>ti* 'comits sin against' (Y 9.29) < \*-*ah<sup>h</sup>iati*.

• The developments of proto-Indo-Iranian \*s: after the vowels *ī* and *ū* (including the diphthongs *ai* and *au*, as well as *in* and *un*) and after the consonants *r*, *k/g/gh*, IE *k̑/g̑/gh̑*, and *p/bʰ*, IIr. \*s became *š* (or *ž*), the so-called *ruki* rule (YAv. *ga'ri-š* 'mountain', \**āp-š* 'water' > nom. sg. *āfš* ~ pl. *āpō*, \**dī(d)b-ža-* 'seek to deceive' *dīβža-* ~ *dauua-* 'deceive' < \**daβa-*, etc.). It remained as *s* before stops and affricates, as well as after dentals, which were assimilated, the resulting geminate being then simplified (*t/d + s* > *ss* > *s*; °*bəṛṣ* 'carrying' > °*bəṛs*). In other positions *s* became proto-Iranian *h*, which in turn underwent various changes. Endings beginning with proto-Indo-Iranian \*s, therefore show up in Old Iranian variously with *š*, *s*, *h*, or *nil*.

The most important consonant alternations shared by the Old Iranian languages are the following (others appear in table 2):

• In general *p*, *t*, *k* > *f*, *θ*, *x* before consonants (including the IIr. laryngeal); except that Av. *p* remained (was restored?) before *t*.

• Indo-Iranian *s* between vowels or after a final vowel > \**h*; in sandhi before enclitic *-ca* (and a few other instances) the original *s* was retained in Avestan: *-as°*, *-ās°*, but became *š* in Old Persian (Ir. \**ahurah* > Av. *ahurō* ~ *ahurasca*; Ir. \**kah* 'who?' > Av. *kō* ~ *kasciṭ* 'any', OP *kašciy*).

• Dental + dental > sibilant + dental: *t + t* always > *st*; *d + t* or *d + d* > *st* or *zd* (originally, *zd* < IIr. *d + dʰ*).

• All geminates were simplified (\**ap-b°* > \**abb°* in YAv. *a'βiīō*, OP *abiš*).

• Dental before sibilant was lost (assimilation + simplification); after sibilant it was sometimes lost, sometimes remained (OAv. 3rd sg. °*cinas* < √*caēš* 'assign', °*rūraost* < √*raod* 'lament', *xšnāuš* < √*xšnao* 'satisfy', *dāṛōšt* < √*dars* 'see' (?); see Tremblay 1999).

• Indo-Iranian *s* and *š* were voiced > *z* and *ž* before *b*, *d*, *g*, *j* (Av. \**s-di* > *zdī*, YAv. *vāxš + -biš* > *vāyž'biš* < *vāk/c-* 'word').

Proto-Avestan consonant changes include the following:

• Between vowels (with some exceptions) *h* > *ḡh* (with preceding *ā* > *ā̂*); final *-ah* > *-ō*, final *āh* > *-ā̂*; alternating with *s* in sandhi (*manah-*: nom.-acc. dual *manahī* ~ ins. sg. *manaḡhā* ~ nom.-acc. sg. *manō* 'thought', *manascā* ~ nom.-acc. pl. *manā*).

• Final proto-Iranian \**-aḡh* (< IIr. *-ans*) > \**aḡh* > OAv. *-əḡḡ*, YAv. *-ə* (occasionally YAv. *-a*), sandhi *-əḡḡs°*, *-əs°*, *-as°*; in YAv. \**-uḡ* > *-uū* (OAv. *mašiiəḡḡ* 'mortals', *səḡḡhascā* 'announcements', YAv. *vispə*, *haoma* 'haomas', *daēuuū/daēū* 'demons').

• Proto-Iranian *s*, *z* (< IIr. *ć*, *ǰ*, *ǰʰ*) > *š* before *t* and partly before *n*; they remain before *m*.

Indigenous Old Persian consonant alternations include the following:

• Final \**-h* in sandhi before enclitics in *c* > *-š* (OP *kašciy*, *cišciy* = Av. *kas-ciṭ*, *cisciṭ* 'anybody/thing');

• Iranian *θ̑* > *šiy* (OInd. *satya-*, Av. *ha'θiia-*, OP *hašiya-* 'real, true').

• Iranian *θr* ~ *č*<sup>13</sup> (OInd. *putra-*, Av. *puθra-*, OP *puça-* 'son').

• Old Persian *θ*, resulting from the Iranian morphophonological alternation *t* ~ *θ*, spread to forms where it was not historically expected (e.g.,

13. A sibilant of uncertain nature.

*gātu-* 'place, throne': nom. \**gātuš*, gen. \**gāθuah*, which produced a new stem *gāθu-*).

Most of the Old Persian ~ Median consonant alternations do not affect the morphology. The most important are the following:

Indo-Ir.	OP (= Av.)	Med.	Examples:
*č	θ	s	<i>aθanga</i> ~ <i>asan-</i> 'stone'
*j <sup>(h)</sup>	d	z	<i>adānā</i> 'knew' ~ <i>vazarka-</i> 'great'
*čū	s	sp	<i>uvasa</i> ~ <i>uvaspa</i> 'having good horses'
*j <sup>(h)</sup> ū	z	zb	<i>hizānam</i> 'tongue' ~ <i>patiyazbayam</i> 'I invoked'
*tj̄	šj̄	θj̄	<i>hašiya</i> 'real' ~ <i>xšāyaθiya</i> 'king'
*tr	ç	θr	<i>xšāça</i> 'command, empire' ~ <i>xšāθrita</i> proper name

The dialect status of the two treatments of Indo-Iranian \*čt and \*jt : št and st (Av. št), as in *<sup>h</sup>ufraštam* ~ *<sup>h</sup>ufrastam* 'well-punished', is unclear.

## 2. Verb system

### 2.1. Introduction

The verb system contains finite and non-finite forms, distributed over the following categories:

- *Tense* or *aspect*, relating an action to the present time of the speaker as taking place before, during, or after and as having been completed or not.
- *Mood*, describing the action as real, unreal, foreseen, etc.
- *Voice*, describing the action as affecting another (active), being done in the subject's interest (middle), or suffered by the subject (middle, passive). Finite forms have the categories of *number* and *person*, while the non-finite forms behave like nouns (*infinitives*) and adjectives (*participles*).

Like nouns, verb stems are classified as vocalic or consonantal. Stems ending in *-a* are called *thematic*; all the others are *athematic*: stems ending in consonants (including the Ilr. laryngeal \*H) or semi-vowels (*i*, *u*) or diphthongs.

The endings are basically the same in the two classes, but in the athematic conjugations frequent morphophonological changes result from the combinations of final consonant of the stem plus the initial consonant of the ending. The passage of athematic verbs into the thematic conjugation is frequent both in Avestan (where it is sometimes the result of poor manuscript transmission) and in Old Persian.

#### 2.1.1. Tenses

The Old Avestan tenses are *present* 'he does, he is doing', *imperfect* 'he did, he was doing', *aorist* 'he did, he has done', *perfect* 'he has (always, never) done' or 'he did and now is' (*present perfect*), and probably a *pluperfect* in the function of preterite of the *present perfect* 'he had done and now was'.

The notion of past could be emphasized by the addition of the *augment* (*a-*) to the imperfect/injunctive and the aorist injunctive. In Old Persian, the past tenses always have the augment, but in Avestan the augment is

rare and its function not well understood. In Young Avestan, there are, moreover, very few clear examples of the augment, as the preverb *ā-* is frequently shortened to *a-* and the augment can be lengthened to *ā-*.

Young Avestan and Old Persian still have several aorist forms, but they are used mainly in the optative; the indicative and subjunctive are rare and limited to special, probably standard, formulaic contexts. The perfect is used in Young Avestan in its old functions, though there are few forms. The perfect optative is used as *irrealis* in both Young Avestan and Old Persian. The common past narrative tense is the present injunctive in Young Avestan and the augmented imperfect in Old Persian.

In both Young Avestan and Old Persian, the optative is used to express repeated or habitual past action (cf. English 'he would go'). It then takes the augment, regularly in Old Persian and occasionally in Young Avestan: YAv. *auuaēnōiš* 'you would see', *auuarōiṭ* 'he would carry' (< *bara-*), *apa-taiiēn* 'they would go about falling all over', *aḍaxšaiiaētā* 'he would mark out(?)', *\*apəṛṣaiiatəm* (mss. *°saētəm*) 'they [dual] would converse'; *nišāḍai-iōiš* 'you would set down', *xšaiiōiṭ* 'he would rule', *frasāuuaiiōiṭ* 'he would recite', *fraorənaēta* (< *fra-ḡəṛn-*) 'he would profess', *frastarənaēta* 'he would spread out', *frāiiazaēta* 'he would sacrifice'; OP *avājanīyāt* 'he would kill', *akunavaya<sup>n</sup>tā* 'they would do'.

A periphrastic perfect formed by the perfect participle in *-ta* plus the verb 'be' (similar to German *Ich bin gewesen* and French *je suis allé*) is seen occasionally in Young Avestan. In Old Persian, it appears to have replaced the old perfect indicative in its function of conclusive statement (*ima taya manā kartam* 'all] this that I have done').<sup>14</sup>

### 2.1.2. Moods

There are five moods: *indicative* 'he does, he is doing', *subjunctive* '(that) he (should) do', *imperative* 'do!', *optative* 'may he do, he should do, (I wish) he would do', and (present, aorist) *injunctive* 'he did, has done'.

The subjunctive is obtained from the indicative by the lengthening of the thematic vowel in the thematic conjugations and the addition of a thematic vowel in the athematic conjugations. The subjunctive forms of athematic verbs are therefore formally often indistinguishable from thematic indicative forms. To distinguish between the two moods, athematic verbs frequently adopt thematic subjunctive endings. The only subjunctive ending not found in the indicative is the 1st sg. sbjv. *-āmi*, vs. ind. *-(ā)mi*. In the optative, athematic verbs add the formant *\*-iā-/i-* (Av. *-iiā-*, OP *-iyā-*) to the root; thematic verbs add *-i-* to the thematic vowel to obtain the optative formant *\*-ai-* (Av. *-aē-*, *-ōi-*, *-aii-*, OP *-ai-*, *-ay-*). The stem of the imperative is identical with that of the indicative, but it has its own set of endings.

### 2.1.3. Voice

There are two *voices*: active and middle. Verbs can have active and/or middle forms. Some verbs have only active forms, some only middle

14. In Middle Persian and some other Middle Iranian languages this eventually became the regular past tense.

forms, and some both active and middle forms. Only in the third group can the middle forms have a special function, different from that of the active forms.

Intransitive verbs usually have only active or only middle forms, while transitive verbs can take both active and middle forms. If they do, then most often the distinction between the two forms is active : passive; more rarely the middle denotes that the action as being performed in the interest of the subject. This is the case when the verb also has a special passive form. Occasionally the middle forms of a verb have the same meaning as the active ones, especially in the case of verbs of motion. Examples:

- Middle verbs without active counterpart: *maniia-* ‘think’, *yaza-* ‘to sacrifice’, etc.

- Passive: *aza-* act. ‘lead, take (away)’ ~ mid. ‘be led, taken away’; *vaēna-* act. ‘see’ ~ mid. ‘be seen’; *bara-* act. ‘carry’ ~ mid. ‘ride’ (lit., be carried), etc.

- Action performed in the interest of the subject: *paca-* act. ‘cook’ ~ mid. ‘cook for oneself’; *var<sup>ə</sup>δaiia-* act. ‘increase (something else), enlarge’ ~ mid. ‘increase (by oneself), become larger’, etc.

- Same meaning as active: *fracara-* act., mid. ‘go forth’; OP *ah-* ‘be’, *ai-* ‘go’, both with 3rd sg. impf. act. ~ 3rd pl. impf. mid. (*āha* ~ *āha<sup>m</sup>tā*, *āiš* ~ *āya<sup>m</sup>tā*)

- Differentiation of meaning: *hišta-* act. ‘to stand = take up a position’, mid. ‘to stand = to be standing’; *daδā-/daδ-* act. ‘to make, give’, mid. ‘to take (on), receive’

The passive (‘it is done, he is killed’) can be expressed by middle forms or by a special present stem in *-ja-* (Av. *-iia-*, OP *-iya-*; see below 2.1.4.3).

A special Indo-Iranian 3rd sg. passive form was made from the aorist stem with the ending *-i* (OAv. *-ī*, YAv. *-i*). In Young Avestan, this form is also made from the present stem (*ə<sup>r</sup>nāuuī* ‘was set in motion’) and from the perfect stem (*ā<sup>i</sup>δi* ‘is/was said’). The extension may have resulted from the fact that, in verbs with root-stem presents, the stems of the 3rd sg. passive and the present were the same; cf. *jaini* ‘was smashed’, present stem. *jan-*.

## 2.1.4. Stem formations

### 2.1.4.1. Ablaut in verbs

The athematic verbs, like the athematic nouns, show ablaut, typically distinguishing lengthened grade ~ full grade ~ zero grade in the root syllable (e.g., Av. *mrao-/mru-* ‘say’) or the stem formant (e.g., Av. *-nao-/nauu-* ~ *-nu-*, OP *-nau-/nu-*).

The lengthened grade is found only in the “Narten” presents, the *s*-aorist ind. sg., and in some 3rd sg. perfect forms of roots of the type C<sub>1</sub>aC<sub>2</sub>:

- “Narten” present: OAv. *stāumī* ‘I praise’, YAv. *nāismī* ‘I scorn’ (for \**nāin-mi* after *nāis-t* < *vnaēd*; Tremblay 1999)

- Aorist 2nd/3rd sg.: OAv. *dāiš* ‘you showed/have shown’, *xšnāuš* ‘he has favored’, *dārəšt* ‘he has seen(?)’

- Perfect 3rd sg.: OAv. *\*nənāsā* ‘has perished’, *hišāiiā* ‘has bound’, YAv. *buuūuuu* ‘has become’, *daδāra* ‘has held up’

The full grade is found in the present, aorist, and perfect sg. ind. (with the above exceptions), throughout the paradigms in the subjunctive, and in the sg. imperative, and, occasionally, in the 2nd plural present indicative and imperative.

The zero grade is found elsewhere: in the dual and plural of the present, aorist, and perfect, in the 3rd plural imperative, and throughout the optative.

In the 3rd plural present we often have ambikinetic ablaut and in the 2nd and 3rd sg. optative endings, apparently conditioned by (proto-Av.) stress patterns: unstressed zero grade of the root + stressed full grade of the ending (-ənti, -ən; -iiā-, -iiāt, e.g., *ah-* 'be': *ah-mi* ~ *h-ənti* ~ *h-iiāt*) or stressed full grade of the root + unstressed zero grade of the ending (-a<sup>i</sup>ti and -a<sup>t</sup> < \*-nt(i); -iš-, -īt, e.g., *dā-* 'place, give': *dadā-ti* ~ *dad-a<sup>i</sup>ti*, *dad-a<sup>t</sup>* ~ *da<sup>i</sup>d-īt*).

#### 2.1.4.2. Present system

Present stems are divided into athematic and thematic conjugations in the traditional manner. Each conjugation contains a miscellany of stem formations.

The athematic present conjugations.

In the athematic conjugations the present stems end in consonants or in a vowel, short or long (laryngeal stems). All athematic stems show ablaut, and numerous sandhi phenomena occur between the final consonants of the stem and the initial consonants of the endings.

There are the following types.

A. Root stems consist of the root itself, modified only by ablaut and internal sandhi changes, e.g., Av. *ah-/as-/h-* 'be', *aē-/i-* 'go', *jan-/ja-/yn-* 'smash', *vas-/us-* 'wish', */stao-/stu-* 'praise', *mrao-/mru-* 'say'; OP *ah-/as-, ai-, di-* 'rob', *jan-, pā-* 'protect', *ā-xšnau-/ā-xšnu-* 'hear'.

A subgroup of root-presents are the so-called Narten presents, which have lengthened grade in the present indicative and injunctive singular (Av. *tāšti*, *nāist* < √naid).

B. Reduplicated stems are identical with the root stems plus reduplication. The reduplication is of two types, either with a short vowel or with a long vowel or a diphthong or two consonants ("intensives").

1. Av. *daδā-/daδ-* 'place, give', *didaē-/di<sup>i</sup>dii-* 'see', *hiš.hak-/hišc-* 'follow'; OP *dadā-* 'place, give'

2. Av. *zaozao-/zaozu-* 'keep invoking', *car<sup>ə</sup>kar-/car<sup>ə</sup>kə<sup>ə</sup>-* 'keep singing', *šasaṅh-* 'keep announcing'

C. Stems with *n*-infixes are originally roots of the type C<sub>1</sub>VC<sub>2</sub> (or C<sub>1</sub>VC<sub>2</sub>C<sub>3</sub>) which formed their present stems by infixing *-n-* before the last consonant C<sub>1</sub>V-na-C<sub>2</sub>-/C<sub>1</sub>V-n-C<sub>2</sub>-. The root itself is always in the zero grade, while the suffix shows ablaut. There are three main types, those from roots ending in *-u*, in a laryngeal *-H*, or in another consonant.



1. Stems from roots ending in a consonant other than *u* or *H*, e.g., Av. *cinah-/ciš-* ‘assign’ (< \**cjš-*) < \**ci-na-s-/ci-n-s-*; *vinad-/viṇd-* ‘find’ < \**vi-na-d-/vi-n-d-*; \**məṛ<sup>ə</sup>nak-/məṛ<sup>ə</sup>ṅk-* ‘destroy’ < \**mṛ-na-k-/mṛ-n-k-*.

2. Stems from roots ending in *H* were originally of the type CV-na-H-/CV-n-H-. In Indo-Iranian, the laryngeal combined with the infix *-na-* to produce the suffix *-nā-/n-*, e.g., YAv. *fīnā-/fīn-* ‘receive as guest friend(?)’ < \**fri-na-H-/fri-n-H-*; *miθnā-/* ‘dwell’ < \**mit-na-H-/mit-n-H-*; *zānā-/zān-*, OP *dānā-/* ‘know, savoir’ < \**ǰ<sup>h</sup>H-na-H-/ǰ<sup>h</sup>H-n-H-*; YAv. *zīnā-/zīn-*, OP *ḍīnā-/* ‘take away’ < \**ǰi-na-H-/ǰi-n-H-*. Before consonant, the weak forms tend to lose their *n*, nasalizing the preceding vowels, sometimes also losing the nasalization, e.g., OAv. *hūuamahi* < *hūnm-*, *friīamahī* < *friṇm-*, *cīšmahī* < *cīnšm-*; YAv. *viste* < *vīste* < \**vind-tai*.

3. Stems from roots ending in *u* were originally of the type CV-na-*u*-/CV-n-*u*-. The *u* combined with the infix *-na-* to produce the suffix *-nau-/nu-*, e.g., Av. *s<sup>u</sup>runao-/s<sup>u</sup>runu-* ‘hear’ < \**sṛ-na-u-/sṛ-n-u-*; OAv. *d<sup>ə</sup>b<sup>ə</sup>nao-* ‘deceive’.

Often this stem-type is formed from roots that do not end in *u*, so descriptively we are dealing with a suffix *-nao-/nu-*, e.g., Av. *kəṛ<sup>ə</sup>nao-/kəṛ<sup>ə</sup>nu-*, OP *kunau*<sup>15</sup> ‘do, make’ < *vkar* (pptc. Av. *kəṛ<sup>ə</sup>ta-*, OP *kar<sup>ə</sup>ta-*); YAv. *aš-nao-/ašnu-* ‘reach’ < \**Hǰc-nau-* (inf. OAv. *āždiīāi* < \**a<sub>1</sub>d-* or *ā-a<sub>1</sub>d-*); *sri-nao-/srinu-* ‘lean’ < \**sri-nau-* (pptc. *srita-*); Av. *-/daržnu-*, OP *daršnau-* ‘dare’ < \**dṛš-nau-*.

The thematic present conjugations.

In the thematic conjugations all the present stems end in the vowel *a*. There are the following subgroups:

A. Stems with *a* added to the root

1. Root with zero grade: Av. *viša-* ‘be ready’, *həṛ<sup>ə</sup>za-* ‘release’; OP *ṃar<sup>ə</sup>da-* ‘wipe’, *ṃar<sup>ə</sup>da-* ‘release’, etc.

2. Root with full grade: Av. *bara-* ‘carry’, *naiia-* ‘lead’, *māēza-* ‘urinate’, *bauua-* ‘become’, *saoca-* ‘burn’; OP *bara-*, *naya-*, *vaina-* ‘see’, *bava-*, etc. This is the most common type.

3. Root with long grade: Av. *brāza-* ‘shine’, *frāda-* ‘make prosper’, etc.

B. Stems with *ia* added to the root

1. The root has the zero or full grade: Av. *pa<sup>i</sup>diia-* ‘lie down’, *spasiia-* ‘keep an eye on’, *maniia-* ‘think’, *uxšiiia-* ‘grow’, *bu<sup>i</sup>šiiia-* ‘notice’, *miriia-* ‘die’, *θrāiia-* ‘protect’; OP *jadiya-* ‘ask for’, *durujiya-* ‘tell a lie’, *mariya-* ‘die’, *ṣtāya-* ‘place’, etc. In Avestan, the type with long *ā* usually has its *ā* shortened: *ṣtaiia-*; this type is different from the type in *-ai<sub>1</sub>a-*, which has short *a* in both Avestan and OP (see below). Av. *zaiia-* ‘be born’ is from \**zāi<sub>1</sub>a-* < \**ǰ<sup>h</sup>H-ia-* (OInd. *jāya-*).

To this class belong the passive forms in *-ia-*, derived from transitive verbs (see below).

15. For \**kṛ<sup>ə</sup>nau-*, with irregular sound development in high-frequency word.

2. Stems in *-āja-* > Av. *-āīia-*: *gə<sup>h</sup>ruuāīia-* 'seize', OP *garbāya-*. These few verbs may have alternate present stems in *-nā-/n-* (Av. *gə<sup>h</sup>βnā-*, OInd. *gṛbhñā-*).

3. Denominative verbs: *aēnaīha-* 'comit sin against' < *aēnah-* 'sin', *bišaziia-* and *baēšaziia-* 'heal' < *bišaz-* 'doctor', *baēšaza-* 'medicine', *nəma-xīia-* 'do homage' < *nəmah-* 'homage', etc.; OP *patiy-avahāya-* 'pray for help in turn'; cf. Av. *auuah-* 'help'.

C. Stems with *aīa* added to the root. These stems are typically transitive (a few exceptions).

1. Root with zero grade, including roots in *ā-*: Av. *bə<sup>h</sup>raīia-* 'strengthen(?)', *saḍaiia-* 'appear, seem' (< *vsand*), *zbaīia-* 'invoke' (< *√zbā*), etc., OP *θadaya-*, *zbaya-*, etc.

2. Root with full grade: Av. *apaīia-* 'reach' (< *\*āpaīa-*), *daēsaiia-* 'show', *bandaiia-* 'bind', *dar<sup>h</sup>zaiia-* 'chain', etc.; OP *taraya-* 'traverse', *gaudaya-* 'hide'

3. Root with lengthened grade:

a. Non-causatives: Av. *dāraīia-* 'hold', etc.; OP *dāraya-*

b. Causatives, see below

4. Denominatives: Av. *ar<sup>h</sup>zaiia-* 'do battle' < *ar<sup>h</sup>za-* 'battle'

D. Stems with *-sa-* (OInd. *-ccha-*) added to the root in the zero grade. This is a very common type in Old Iranian.

1. Root with zero grade: Av. *jasā-* 'come' < *√gam*; *oiiasa-*, OP *iyasa-* 'grab' < *īam-*; Av. *tə<sup>h</sup>sa-*, OP *tarsa-*, 'fear', etc. Several of these stems have inchoative meaning, that is, 'start becoming something, to become something': *tafsa-* 'become hot', *tə<sup>h</sup>sa-* 'become afraid', etc. In later Iranian this type became a common passive formation.

2. Roots in long *ā-*: Av. *yāsa-* 'ask for', OP *xšnāsa-* 'know, *connaître*'

E. Stems with *hiia/šiia* added to the root in the full grade. This is the future tense (see below).

F. Stems in *-aniia-*: *zaraniia-* 'become angry' (cf. OInd. *hṛṇīya-*) < *zaran-* 'make angry', *pə<sup>h</sup>rsaniia-* 'discuss' (probably secondary after *viiāxmaniia-* 'discuss, debate[?]', denominative of *viiāxman-* 'verbal contest[?])

G. Vestigial stem formations:

*-uua-*: Av. *juua-*, OP *jīva-* 'live', Av. *fīia<sup>h</sup>ha-* 'hail', *ha<sup>h</sup>ruua-* 'guard'; expanded by *-aiia-*: *raēθβaiia-* 'mingle' (with *θβ* < *θυ*), *ta<sup>h</sup>ruuaiia-* 'overcome' (cf. OInd. *tūrva-*, *tūrvaya-*)

*-da-*: only in *\*x<sup>h</sup>abda-* 'sleep' in *ni.x<sup>h</sup>abdaīia-* 'put to sleep' and *auua-<sup>h</sup>habda-* 'go to sleep' < *√x<sup>h</sup>ap*

*\*-ha-/šā-*: only in *baxša-* 'distribute' < *√bag*

H. Stem with *n* infix and *a* added to the root of the type C<sub>1</sub>V-n-C<sub>2</sub>a-:

Some of these are old thematic formations: *kə<sup>h</sup>ṛta-* 'cut', *hiṇca-* 'pour', etc.; OP *\*pi<sup>h</sup>θa-* 'inscribe' (if not to be read as *paiθa-*; cf. MPers. *ni-bēs-*).

Others are secondary formations of athematic verbs with *n*-infix: YAv. *mər̥ṇca-* ‘destroy’ < OAv. *mər̥-ṇ-k-*, YAv. *viṇda-* ‘find’ < OAv. *vi-na-d-*.

I. Stems with reduplication and *a* added to the root:

1. With simple reduplication: Av. *hišta-*, OP (*h*)*išta-* ‘stand’ < √*stā*, Av. *hiḍa-* ‘sit’ < √*had* (< IE \**sida-* < \**si-zda-* < √*sed*), *hišmara-* ‘memorize, recite’ < √*hmar*

2. With strong reduplication (‘intensives’): Av. *yžar̥.yžara-* ‘gurgle’ < √*gžar*, *jaṇna-* ‘smash to pieces’ < √*gan*

J. Stems with reduplication and *ha/ša* added to the root (‘desideratives’): OAv. *dīdrayža-* ‘wish to hold firmly’ < √*dra(n)g*, Av. *zixšnāṇha-* ‘wish to know’ < √*xšnā*, *mīmar̥xša-* ‘wish to destroy’ < √*mark*; *susruša-* ‘wish to hear’ < √*srao/sru*; *sixša-* ‘learn’ < \**si(š)xša-* (< √*sak*; cf. *sācaīia-* ‘teach’); *dīβža-* ‘wish to deceive’ < \**di(d)βža-*<sup>16</sup> < √*dab*

### 2.1.4.3. Derived conjugations

The future, passive, and causative are part of the verbal system, the future contrasting with other tenses and the passive and causative being part of the intransitive : transitive oppositions.

#### Future

The future is formed with *hiia/šīia/sīia* added to the root in the full grade. There are no forms attested in Old Persian.

Present stem	Future
<i>dāḍā-</i> ‘place, give’	<i>dāhiia-</i>
<i>zaiia-</i> ‘be born’	<i>zahiia-</i>
<i>vana-</i> ‘overcome’	<i>vaṛḥa-</i>
<i>vaēḍaiia-</i> ‘inform’	* <i>vaēsiia-</i>
<i>naiia-</i> ‘lead’	<i>naēsiia-</i>
<i>sāuuaiia-</i> ‘revitalize’	<i>saošīia-</i>
<i>hunauu-/hunu-</i> ‘press (the <i>haoma</i> )’	<i>haošīia-</i>
<i>bauua-</i> ‘become’	<i>būsiia-</i>
<i>hər̥za-</i> ‘release’	<i>har̥siia-</i>
<i>mrao-</i> (aor. <i>vaoca-</i> ) ‘say’	<i>vaxsiia-</i>

#### Passive

The passive is formed with the suffix *-ja-*, with the root in the zero or full grade: Av. *kiriia-* ‘be made’, *janiia-* ‘be smashed’, *bairiia-* ‘be carried’; OP *kariya-*, *janiya-*, *ṭahaya-* ‘be announced’, *bariia-*, etc. In Avestan, this form normally takes the middle endings, but in Young Avestan and Old Persian active endings are also well attested (Skjærvø 1999b: 187). In Young Avestan, it is sometimes not possible to decide from the manuscript readings whether the original form of a 3rd sg. or pl. is *-ti*, *-ṇti* or *-te*, *-ṇte* (Kellens 1984: 129–30).

16. Actually: \**di-db-ž<sup>h</sup>a-* < \**di-db<sup>h</sup>* + *sa-* < √*dabh*. In OInd. the group *bž* was replaced by *ps*, e.g., *dipsa-*, restoring the familiar suffix *-sa-*, *š* (ṣ) being impossible after *p*.

Present stem	Passive	
	YAv.	OP
<i>daēsaiia-</i> ‘show’	<i>disiia-</i>	
<i>sāuuaiia-</i> ‘revitalize’	<i>sūiia-</i>	
<i>kər<sup>ə</sup>nauu-/kunau-</i> ‘do’	<i>kiriia-</i>	<i>kəriya-</i>
<i>kər<sup>ə</sup>nta-</i> ‘cut’	<i>kər<sup>ə</sup>θiia-</i>	
<i>garbāya-</i> OP ‘seize’		* <i>garbiya-</i> (* <i>grabiya-</i> ?)
<i>daδā-</i> ‘place, give’	<i>daiia-</i>	
<i>bara-</i> ‘carry’	<i>ba<sup>r</sup>riia-</i>	
<i>x<sup>ə</sup>ara-</i> ‘eat’	<i>x<sup>ə</sup>a<sup>r</sup>iia-</i>	
<i>jan-</i> ‘smash’	<i>janiia-</i>	<i>janiya-</i>
<i>apaiia-</i> ‘reach’ (for <i>āp-</i> )	<i>āfiia-</i>	
<i>vaza-</i> ‘convey’	<i>vaziia-</i>	
<i>yaza-/yada-</i> ‘sacrifice’	<i>yeziia-</i>	<i>yadiya-</i>

### Causative

The causative is formed with the suffix *-aiia-* on the lengthened (or full) grade of the root. In Avestan, a long *ā* may be shortened. The causative is transitive when it corresponds to a passive or intransitive verb. It is factitive (‘make somebody do something’) when it corresponds to a transitive verb.

Present stem	Causative:
<i>suiia-</i> ‘be revitalized’	~ <i>sūuuaiia</i> ‘revitalize’
<i>s<sup>r</sup>runau-</i> ‘hear’	~ <i>s<sup>r</sup>āuuaiia-</i> ‘make heard > recite, sing’
<i>taca-</i> ‘run, flow’	~ <i>tācaiiia-</i> ‘make run, flow’
<i>vifiia-</i> ‘be bugged’	~ <i>vaēpaiia-</i> ‘bugger’
<i>d<sup>ə</sup>b<sup>ə</sup>nao-</i> ‘deceive’	~ <i>dābaiaia-</i> ‘make deceive’
<i>hiš.hak-, haca-</i> ‘follow’	~ <i>hācaiiia-</i> ‘make follow’

### 2.1.4.4. The aorist

There are four main stem formations of the aorist: (1) the root aorist; (2) the thematic aorists identical with those of the corresponding present conjugations; (3) the *s*-aorist made by adding Ilr. \**s* (> Ir. *h/š/s*) to the root, which has the long grade in the sg. indicative, elsewhere the full grade; and (4) the reduplicated thematic aorist with zero grade of the root. Some verbs have both root- and *s*-aorist forms (*maṅh-/mas-* ~ *man-* ‘think’).

Examples of *s*-aorists: indicative: *mēṅhī* < *maṅh-i* ‘I have thought’, *vās* < \**van-s-t* ‘he has won’, *stāṅhaṭ* < \**stā-h-ṅt* ‘they have stood’, *xšnāu-š* ‘he has favored’, *fraši* ‘I consulted’ < \**frac-š-i* (*v̄pars/fras* ‘ask’); subjunctive: *varəšā* < \**varj-š-ā* ‘I shall perform’, *jəṅgha<sup>t</sup>tī* < \**jaṅh-h-* ‘he shall come’ (*v̄gam*); imperative *θrāzdūm* ‘protect!’

### 2.1.4.5. The perfect<sup>17</sup>

The perfect stem is formed by reduplication. The verbs *ād-/āδ-* ‘to say’ and *vaēd-/vaēδ-* (*vaēθ-*) ‘know’ lack the reduplication (table 23). The only Old Persian example is *caxr-*, weak stem of \**cakār-* < *√kar* ‘do’.

17. Many perfect forms are found only in the *Frahang ī Oim*, a list of Avestan words translated into Pahlavi.

The perfect has a similar distribution of strong and weak stems as the athematic verbs: strong stem in the indicative singular and the subjunctive (some exceptions), weak stem elsewhere (the stem *ād-/āδ-* ‘say’ is invariable).

The vowel of the reduplicated syllable is usually *a*, *i*, or *u*, in harmony with the vowel of the root, e.g., *ca-kan-* < √*kan* ‘love’, *da-δa-* < √*dā*; *ci-kaēθ-* < √*kaēθ/ciθ* ‘distinguish’, *ri-riθ-* < √*raēθ/riθ* ‘pass away’; *ru-raoδ-* < √*raod/rud* ‘weep, howl’; *hušxʷaf-* (for *\*hušuuaf-*) < √*xʷap* ‘sleep’.

Exceptions to this rule include a few verbs whose reduplication syllable has long *ā*: *dā-darʷs-* < √*vaēn/dars* ‘see’, *dādr-* (YAv. *daδr-*) < √*dar* ‘hold’, *pā-fr-* < √*par* ‘fill’, *cā-xr-* < √*kar*. The stem *bābuu-* < √*baō/bu* ‘become’ is probably for *\*bāuu-* (< *\*bāβu-*), with reintroduction of the *b* of the stem, while *buuāuu-* < *\*buβāu-*.

Roots beginning with *ā-* have long *ā-* in the perfect: *āp-* < √*p* ‘reach’, *āṅh-* < √*ah* ‘be’; roots beginning with *aē-/i-* have perfect stem in *iiaē-* (commonly spelled *iaē-*, *yaē-*): *iiaē-/iaē-* < √*aē* ‘go’, *yaēš-* (for *\*ijaēš-*) < √*aēš/iš* ‘seek’.

#### 2.1.4.6. Suppletive stem systems

There are a few suppletive verb systems, e.g., Av. pres. *mrao-*, aor., perf. *vac-* ‘say’; Av. pres. *vaēna-*, OP pres. *vaina-*, Av. aor., perf. *darʷs-* ‘see’, OP impv. *dī-* (cf. MPers. pres. stem *wēn-*, past stem *dīd-*).

## 2.2. Endings

There are two main types of endings: those of the present and aorist systems, and those of the perfect system. Both these groups are further subdivided into *primary* and *secondary* endings, a classification whose main merit is on the diachronic level. Among the primary endings, there are three sub-groups: those of the present indicative/subjunctive, those of the imperative, and those of the perfect. The subjunctive takes both primary and secondary endings.

The primary endings differ from the secondary endings in various ways, sometimes by additional elements or vowel alternations. Thus, the primary endings of the 2nd and 3rd singular and the 3rd plural active and middle differ from the secondary endings as follows in the present ind. and inj.: primary thematic act. *-i* ~ mid. *\*-ai* (> *-īe*), secondary *-Ø* ~ *-a* in the 2nd and 3rd sg. and 3rd pl.; 2nd sg. *-ahi* ~ *-ō* (< *\*-ah*), mid. *-aṅhe* ~ *-aṅha*; 3rd sg. *-aʹti* ~ *-at*, mid. *-aʹte* ~ *-ata*; 3rd pl. *-əṅti* ~ *\*-ant* > *-ən*, mid. *-əṅte* ~ *-əṅta*. The 1st sg. active has the endings primary thematic *-ā*, *-āmi* (sbjv. *-ā*, *-āni*) ~ secondary *-əm*, the 1st pl. active primary *-āmahi* ~ secondary *-āma*, etc. Among the dual endings note the opposition dual *uu* ~ pl. *m* in the 1st pl.

In Avestan, the 3rd pl. middle has some endings with *r* (*-īre*, *-raṃ*) instead of *nt*; corresponding to 3rd sg. endings without *t* (*-īe*, *-aṃ*), cf. perf. act. 3rd sg. *-a* ~ 3rd pl. *-arʷ*. Endings with *-rš* are found in the 3rd pl. opt. act. (*-iiaṛʷš*) and plupf. act. (*-əṛʷš* < *\*-rš*). Avestan does not have *r*-endings in the present or aorist (different from OInd.). In the following it is understood that the Old Avestan forms all have long final vowels (*-ā*, *-ē*, *-ō*, *-ī*, *-ū*).

*1st singular active* The primary ending is athematic *-mi*; the thematic ending *\*-ā* (< Ilr. *-ā*, Greek *-ō*) is still found in Avestan (OAv. *-ā*, YAv. *-a*), but *-āmi*, OP *-āmiy* is more common. The subjunctive has *-ā* or athematic *-ani*, thematic *-āni*, OP *-aniy*, *-āniy*. There is no 1st pers. imperative. The secondary ending is *-m* after vowel, but *-əm*, OP *-am* after consonant. The primary ending of the perfect is *-ā* (< Ilr. *-a*).

*2nd singular active* The 2nd sg. ending typically contains the consonants *h/š/s* in all forms except the imperative and perfect active. The primary ending is athematic *-hi/-ši/-si*, thematic Av. *-ahi*, OP *-ahay*, *-ahiy*. The secondary ending is athematic *\*-h/-š/-s*, thematic *\*-ah*, Av. *-ō*, OP *-a<sup>h</sup>*.<sup>18</sup> The YAv. 2nd sg. sbjv. form *-āi* for *-āhi*, not infrequently found in late manuscripts, is probably a feature of late, unskilled pronunciation. The thematic active imperative has no ending and so ends in *-a* (OAv., OP *-ā*). The athematic imperative ends in OAv. *-dī*, YAv. *-di/-di*, OP *-dīy*. The primary ending of the perfect is Av. *-θā* (*-tā* after *s*).

*3rd singular active* The endings of the 3rd sg. active are primary athematic Av. *-ti*, OP *-tiy* and secondary *-t*, OP *-θ*, *-š*, thematic Av. *-a<sup>t</sup>ti*, *-at<sup>t</sup>*, OP *-atiy*, *-a<sup>t</sup>*. The OP ending *-š* is most easily explained by a proportion: 2nd sg. *abara<sup>h</sup>* : 3rd sg. *abara<sup>t</sup>* = 2nd sg. *āiš* : 3rd sg. *X*  $\Rightarrow$  *X* = *āiš* 'he came' (see Allegri and Panaino 1995). The imperative ending is *-tu*, thematic *-atu*, OP *-tuv*, *-atuv*. The primary ending of the perfect is Av. *-ā* (< Ilr. *-a*).

*1st plural active* The 1st plural active endings are primary *-mahi*, OP *-mahay*, thematic *-āmahī*, OP *-āmahay*, secondary *-ma*, thematic *-āmā*, OP *-āmā*.

*2nd plural active* The 2nd pl. active endings are primary *-θa* (*-tā* after sibilants), thematic *-aθa*, secondary *-ta*, OP *-tā*, thematic Av. *-ata*.

*3rd plural active* The endings of the 3rd pl. active are primary *\*-anti*, OP *-a<sup>n</sup>tiy*, or *\*-ati* (< *-nti*) and secondary *-n/-ən/-at* (< *-nt*), OP *-a<sup>n</sup>*. On the vowel gradation see above, 2.1.4.1. The endings without *n* are rare in Young Avestan, where the (thematic) full grade is common. The imperative ending is *-əntu*. The ending of the perfect is primary *-ar<sup>ə</sup>* and secondary *-r<sup>ə</sup>š* for the pluperfect (Jasanoff 1997). The athematic endings of the 3rd pl. optative are *-iiān* or *-iiār<sup>ə</sup>š*, which alternate without any (as yet) known principle of distribution. The YAv. thematic 3rd pl. optative ends in *-aiiān* (*-aēn*), which is identical with the 3rd pl. indicative of *aiia*-stems. In *aiia*-stems the original ending was therefore *-aiiaiiān*, which regularly became *-aiiaēn* (*\*dar<sup>ə</sup>zaiiaēn* 'they should chain'). In the manuscripts, this ending was most often corrupted to *-aiiēn* and then replaced by the more familiar *-aiiān*. Similarly the 3rd pl. optative active ended in *-aiiaiiānta*, which is occasionally found in the manuscripts, but was usually simplified to *-aiia<sup>n</sup>ta*, perhaps as replacement for the expected *\*-aiiaēnta*.<sup>19</sup>

18. The final superscripts in Old Persian are etymological indicators, not necessarily phonetic. The following analogy proportion, in fact, suggests strongly that they were not pronounced.

19. See my review (1998) of Kellens (1995).

*1st dual active* The endings of the dual (only OAv.) parallel those of the plural, with *uu* instead of *m*: primary *-uuahī*, secondary *-uuā*.

*2nd dual active* No examples.

*3rd dual active* The primary endings of the 3rd dual active are thematic *-aθō* and *-atō*, which correspond to OInd. 2nd dual *-athaḥ* vs. 3rd dual *-ataḥ*. The secondary ending is Av. *-təm*, thematic *-atəm*, OP *-atam*. The primary ending of the perfect is *-atar<sup>3</sup>*.

*1st singular middle* The ending of the 1st sg. middle is primary *\*-ai* (OAv. *-ōi*, *-iē*, YAv. *-ie*), OP *-aiy*, secondary *-i*, OP *-iy*; subjv. *-āi*, *-āne*, OP *-ānaiy*. The optative has the ending *-a* (OAv. *-ā*, YAv. *-a*).

*2nd singular middle* The endings of the 2nd sg. middle are primary *\*-hai/-šai/-sai*, athematic Av. *\*-he*, *-se*, thematic Av. *\*-ahe*, OP *-ahaiy*, and secondary *\*-ha/-ša/-sa*, athematic Av. *-ša*, OP *-šā*, thematic Av. *-aḥha*. There is no ending corresponding to OInd. *-thāḥi*. The imperative ending is *-huua/-šua/-suua* (*dasuua* < *\*dad-sua*), OP *-šuvā*, thematic Av. *-aḥha*, OP *-a<sup>h</sup>uvā*.

*3rd singular middle* The ending of the 3rd sg. middle is primary *\*-tai*, OP *-taiy* (graphically indistinguishable from *-tiy*, both < *-t-i-y* >), thematic Av. *-a<sup>t</sup>e*, OP *-ataiy*, and secondary *-ta*, OP *-tā*, thematic *-ata*, OP *-atā*. The imperative middle ending is Av. athematic *-təm*, thematic *-atəm*. There is also a series of archaic Av. athematic endings without *-t-*: pres. *\*-ai* (YAv. *mruīie* 'is spoken', *niḡne* 'is smashed down'), impv. aor. *-am* (OAv. *dām* 'let it be placed', *uḡam* 'let it be spoken').

*1st plural middle* The ending of the 1st pl. middle is OAv. primary *\*-madai* and secondary *-ma<sup>i</sup>dī*. In Young Avestan, *-ma<sup>i</sup>de* (*-ma<sup>i</sup>de*) was generalized.

*2nd plural middle* The primary ending of the 2nd pl. middle was Ir. *\*-duai*. In Old Avestan, this developed normally to *\*-duiē* > *-duiē*, while in Young Avestan, where intervocalic *d* > *δ*, the *u* developed normally > *β*. The YAv. ending must originally have been *\*-δβε*, but the only example has *-θβε*, with the (sporadic) change of *d* > *θ*. The secondary ending—also imperative—was proto-Iranian *\*-duam*. This developed normally to *\*-duam* > OAv. *-dūm*, but YAv. *-δβəm*.

*3rd plural middle* The endings of the 3rd pl. middle are primary *\*-ntai* and secondary *\*-nta* (postconsonantal zero grade *-a<sup>t</sup>e* and *-ata*). There is also an archaic athematic ending YAv. *-re/-ā<sup>i</sup>re* (coupled with 3rd sg. in YAv. *-e*). The imperative ends in athematic pres. *-ram* (OAv. *jēn<sup>a</sup>ram* 'let them be smashed'), thematic *-əntəm*. The perfect optative has *-irəm* < *\*-i-ram* (only YAv. *vaozirəm* 'they would have driven').

*1st dual middle* The endings of the dual (only OAv.) parallel those of the plural, with *uu* instead of *m*: secondary *-uuaidī*.

*2nd dual middle* No examples.

*3rd dual middle* The attested endings of the 3rd dual middle are primary OAv. *-āētē*, YAv. *-ōiθe*, secondary OAv. *-ātəm*, YAv. *-atəm* (*aiia*-stems: *-aiiatəm*). The ending of the perfect is *-ā'te*.

*3rd sg. past passive* The 3rd sg. passive has the ending *-ī*: OAv. (aor.) *auuācī*, *vācī* < *√vak/vac* 'speak, say', *srāuuī* '√srao 'hear'; YAv. pres. *əṛnāuuī* < *əṛnao-* < *√ar* 'set in motion', *ja'ni*; perf. *ā'di* < *√ad* 'say, speak'.

### 2.3. Non-finite forms

The non-finite forms of the verb are the participles, a set of verbal adjectives expressing necessity, and the infinitives.

#### 2.3.1. Present and aorist active participles

The active present participles of the present and aorist stems end in *-nt-*, those from the perfect stem end in *-uuah-/uš-*.

The athematic verbs form the present participle from the weak stem of the root, while participles from thematic verbs have fixed stems in *-ant-* (*-ənt-*).

Participles from athematic verbs have strong stems in *-ant-* and weak stems in *-at-* (secondarily *-āt-*) and are declined like adjectives in *-ant-*, e.g., *hatō*, gen. sg. of *hanṭ-* 'being'. Participles from "Narten" presents have fixed weak stem (OAv. *stauuat-* < *\*stāuṅt* 'praising', YAv. *mruuat-*).

Examples:

*Present* OAv. athematic *hənt-*, *°iiant-* 'going', *s<sup>u</sup>runuuant-* 'listening', *stauuat-*; thematic *baodant-* 'being aware(?)', *uxsiant-* 'growing', *saoši-iant-* (fut.) 'he who shall revitalize'; feminine athematic *šiiē'ti-* 'dwelling'; thematic *maēka'nti-* 'sparkling'; YAv. athematic *°iiant-*, *hanṭ-*, *daṣant-/daṣant-*, *kəṛnuuant-*; thematic *barənt-*, *būšiiant-* (fut.), *srāuuaiiant-*; feminine athematic *ha'ti-*; thematic *barənti-*, *būšiiē'nti-*

*Aorist* OAv. root. *daṅt-*, *hanaṅt-* 'gaining'; YAv. *°buuant-*

#### 2.3.2. Perfect active participles

The perfect participle active is formed with the formant *-uuah-/uš-* from the weak stem with the exception of YAv. *vauuanuuah-* 'having won' and *hanṭhanuš-* 'having gained'. The only Old Avestan forms are *viduuah-/viduš-* 'knowing', *naṣuuah-* (< *na-ns-*) 'having lost'. The Young Avestan forms *viḍuuah-* and *daḍuuah-* must have replaced *\*viḍbah-* and *\*daḍbah-* under the influence of (?) OAv. *viduuah-* and *\*daduuah-*.

In Young Avestan, both stems are attested of the following verbs (note the sound changes):

	strong stem	weak stem
√kaēθ 'distinguish(?)'	cikiθbah-, ciciθbah-	ciciθuš-
√dā 'place, give'	daḍuuah-	daθuš-
√vid 'find, know'	viḍuuah-	viθuš-
√vak 'say, speak'	vaox <sup>v</sup> ah-	vaokuš-
√van 'overcome'	vauuanuuah-	vaonuš-
√jat 'lign up'	yōiθbah-	yaētuš-
√zā 'leave behind, win'	zazuuah-	zazuš-



Other forms include strong stems: *jaynuuah-* < √gan/jan; *taršuuah-* (< \**tařšyah-*) < √taš 'fashion';—weak stems *ar̥huš-* < √āh 'sit'; *jaymuš-* < √gam/jam 'come'; *har̥hanuš-* < √han; *mammuš-* < √man 'think'; *tařkuš-* < √tak 'flow'; *vāuuər̥zuš-* < √varz 'produce'.

There are two kinds of adjectives related to the perfect participle and with similar function:

1. In *-u-*: OAv. *vidu-*, YAv. *viθu-* 'knowing', YAv. *zazu-* 'winner' (both only nom. sg.), and YAv. *jiyāuru-* 'waking' (only acc. sg.)
2. In *-θβan-*: OAv. *ciciθβan-* 'he who has taken notice' (cf. OInd. *cikitvan-*), YAv. *yōiθβan-* 'he who has taken up his position' (both only nom. sg. °*θβā*); note also *fracar̥θβā* 'the one walking'

### 2.3.3. Middle participles

The middle participles of thematic verbs end in Av. *-əmna-*, OP *-amna-*, those of athematic verbs, including the perfect, end in Av. *-āna-*, with the exception of the OAv. pres. *fr̥nəmna-* 'seeking to win as guest friend(?)' and s-aor. *xšnaošəmna-* 'seeking to obtain the favor (of)':<sup>20</sup> YAv. pres. *aojāna-* < √aog 'speak', *ynāna-* < √gan/jan, *mruuāna-* < √mrao 'say', *hunuwana-* < √hao 'press (haoma)', *daθāna-* < √dā 'give, place'; s-aor. *mařhāna-* < √man 'think', *mar̥xšāna-* < √mark 'destroy'; perf. OAv. *āpana-* < √āp 'reach', *vāuuər̥zāna-*, YAv. *apāna-*, *daδrāna-* < √dar 'hold', *har̥hanāna-* < √han 'gain', *'ririθāna-* < √raeθ 'die', *mamnāna-* < √man 'think', *pāpər̥tāna-* < √part 'fight', *vauuazāna-* < √vaz (mid.) 'fly', *zazarāna-* < √zar 'be angry'.

The stem vowel of the thematic participles undergoes the usual changes in *iia*-stems, after a palatal consonant, and after *-uu-*: YAv. *mainimna-* < *maniia-* 'think'; *daomna-* < *dauua-* 'deceive', *hacimna-* < *haca-* (mid.) 'be followed (by)'; but the 'regular' forms have often been reintroduced in the *iia*-stems (cf. Y 68.21, mss. *jaiδiiamnā*, *jaiδimmā* < *jaiδiia-* 'ask for'). In the *aiia*-stems, only forms in *-aiiamna-* are attested.

### 2.3.4. Past participles

The past participle (Eng. 'done, killed') has the ending *-ta-*, before which the regular sound changes take place (except *aoxta-* < *aog-* 'speak', with invariable diphthong). The ending *is*, if possible, added to the zero grade of the root of the verb:

- Roots ending in diphthong/short vowel: *šuta-* 'impelled' < √šu
- Roots ending in long vowels: *dāta-* 'placed, given' < √dā, *stāta-* 'stood' < √stā
- Roots ending in stops: *uxta-* 'spoken' < √vak, *dapta-* 'deceived' < √dab, Av., OP *basta-* 'bound' < √band
- Roots ending in sibilants and *h*: *spašta-* 'seen' < √spas, *varšta-* 'produced' < √varz, *x'asta-* 'thrashed' < √x'ah
- Roots ending in nasals: *mata-* 'thought' < √man
- Roots ending in *r*: *kər̥ta-* 'done, made' < √kar, *stər̥ta-* 'stunned' < √star, *star̥ta-* 'spread out' < √starH

20. See Kellens 1984: 397; Skjærvø 2004.

### 2.3.5. Verbal adjectives in -θa-, -θβa-, and -iia-

Avestan has some adjectives derived from verbs which express ‘that which should or can be done, what is to be done’ (participles of necessity), similar in function to the Latin gerundive.

One group of adjectives has suffixes -θa- (frequently -δa- by internal sandhi; e.g., *uxδa-* ‘to be spoken’, *θrafδa-* ‘to be satisfied’, *friθa-* ‘to be made friendly’) or -θβa- (-tuua- by internal sandhi; e.g., *mθβa- vaxδβa- varšt-uuu-* ‘which ought to be thought, spoken produced’); the others have the suffix -iia- (e.g., *bərʷiia-* ‘to be strengthened (?)’, *išii-* ‘to be sped (along)’, *karšii-* ‘to be tilled, plowed’), which was also attached to nouns (e.g., *yesniia- vahmiia-* ‘worthy of sacrifices and hymns’, Yt. 13.153). The formant -θβa- as the “most characterized” seems to have been productive; cf. *yašʷθβa-* ‘to be sacrificed’ for \**yaštuuu-*.

From past participles and participles of necessity abstract nouns in -ta- could be made: *yesniyata- vahmiyata- xšnaoθβata- frasastata-* ‘sacrifice-worthiness, hymning-worthiness, satisfaction-worthiness, glorification-worthiness’ (Yt. 8.50).

There is a similar, moderately productive suffix -tʷant-: *stərʷθβant-* ‘(weapon) containing = causing paralysis’, *fracarʷθβant-* ‘going forth’ (nom. sg. *fracarʷθβā*, Y 62.8), *vīuuərʷzduuant-* ‘seeking to bloat (one’s possessions?)’ (gen. sg. *vīvərʷzduuatō*, Y 9.30).

### 2.3.6. Infinitives

Infinitives may be formed from the root or the present stem. There are two sets of infinitives: those ending in OAv. -diiāi/YAv. -šiiāi, which have medial function, and the others, which are neutral with respect to voice.

The middle infinitives in -diiāi can be made from the present stem: OAv. athematic *ja’diiāi* ‘to be smashed’, *nī.mərəz’diiāi* ‘to be wiped out’, *mərʷng-diiāi* ‘to be destroyed’; thematic *dīβza’diiāi* ‘to be deceived’, *vərʷziie’diiāi* ‘to be produced’, *θrāiō.diiāi* ‘to be protected’; YAv. athematic *dazdiiāi* ‘to be placed/given’; *frā.vərʷndiiāi* ‘to be chosen’; thematic *vaza’diiāi* ‘to be conveyed’;—or from the aorist stem: athematic OAv. *uzərʷdiiāi* ‘to rise up’, *dərʷdiiāi* ‘to be (up)held’.

The neutral (active/middle) infinitives in Old Avestan comprise a large number of formations that are formally similar to dative singular forms: \*-ai (*pōi* ‘to protect’), \*-uai (*dāuuōi* ‘to give’, *viduiē* ‘to know’), \*-tai (*gaṭ.tōi* ‘to come’, *stōi* ‘to be’, *itē* ‘to go’, *sastē* ‘to announce’), \*-manai (*xšənma’nē* ‘to[?]’) \*-uanai (*vīduuanōi* ‘to know’, *uruuānē* < \**ṛ-uanai*[?] ‘to \*obtain’), \*-ahai (*frādaṛhē* ‘to further’, *srāuuaiiaṛhē* ‘to make heard’).

The Young Avestan neutral infinitive is identical with the dative of an action noun in -ti, with the ending -tē, -taiāē, e.g.: *uxtē* ‘to speak’, *varštē* ‘to perform’, *pa’tištātaiāē* ‘to withstand’. It is sometimes not clear whether we have an infinitive or an action noun in -ti.<sup>21</sup>

The verb *ah-* has the infinitive *stē* ‘to be’. Old Persian has an infinitive in -tanaiy made from the root in the full grade: *ka<sup>n</sup>tanaiy*, *bartanaiy*, *car-tanaiy* (< vkar).

21. Note that the instrumental of such nouns is very common, e.g., *uxti* ‘by saying’.

## 2.4. Verbal prefixes (preverbs)

The preverbs are the common Indo-Iranian ones. In Avestan, but not in Old Persian, the preverbs may be detached from the main verb, usually preceding it, sometimes fronted to the beginning of the clause, sometimes separated by one word only; they may also be lowered to the end of the clause (or metrical half-line). In Old Avestan, they are often repeated directly before the verb, but without counting metrically. They are also separated from the verb by the conjunction *-ca*. When a verb with preverb is repeated, only the preverb may be repeated. In Young Avestan, a verb can, apparently, have two preverbs, e.g., *pa'ti.auua.jasa-* 'to come down hither'.

Old Avestan examples:

*hiiat̥ tā hēm maniū jasaētəm* (< *ham.jasa-*) 'when those two inspirations come together' (Y 30.4)

*vər<sup>o</sup>ziiō.tūcā it̥ ahmāi fracā vātōiiō.tū it̥* (< *fra.vātaia-*) 'Let him (or her) both keep producing it for this one and keep making it known!' (Y 35.6)

*hātəm huuō aojištō yahmāi zauuēng jimā \*kər<sup>o</sup>duš ā* (< *ā.jam-*) 'He is strongest of (all) beings for whom I come to (his) calls (even if they are) weak(?)' (Y 29.3)

*apānō darəgō.jiiāitīm ā xšaθrəm varhēuš manarhō* (< *ā-ap-*) 'having obtained long life, having (obtained) the command of good thought' (Y 33.5)

*ā mā [ā] idūm vahīštā ā x<sup>v</sup>aiθiiācā mazdā dar<sup>o</sup>šaṭcā* (< *ā.yā-*) 'Ask me for my best (utterances), O Mazdā (and you others), (ask me) for (utterances) both having(?) their own (command?) and (uttered) strongly' (Y 33.7).

Young Avestan examples:

*huuarštā mərəā pairica dad<sup>o</sup>mahī āca vaēδaiiamahī* 'the well-wrought thought poems we place all around and make them known' (Y 4.1)

*ā məm yāsar<sup>v</sup>ha spitama frā məm hunuuar<sup>v</sup>ha x<sup>v</sup>ar<sup>o</sup>tēe aoi məm staomaine stūiōi* 'Ask me hither, Spitamid! Press me forth to drink! Praise me for strength!' (Y 9.2)

*us gəuš stuiē tāiiāṭcā hazarṭaṭcā us mazdaiiasnanəm višəm \*ziiānaiiāṭcā viuuāpaṭcā* 'By my praise I remove myself(?) from theft and violence to the cow, (by my praise I remove myself?) from damage and devastation of the houses of Mazdaiiasnians' (Y 12.2)

*nī tē zāire maδəm mruiiē nī aməm nī vər<sup>o</sup>θraγnəm* 'I call down, O tawny one, your intoxication, (I call) down your might and your obstruction-smashing power' (Y 9.17)

*āca nica mrūmaide* 'we call hither and down to us' (Y 68.21)

## 3. Nominal system

There are no articles.

### 3.1. Inflection

#### 3.1.1. Gender

Nouns, adjectives, and pronouns have three genders: masculine, feminine, or neuter. The distribution of the genders is by and large that of Indo-Iranian, with some individual Iranian features (*vak-/vac-* is feminine in Old

Indic, masculine in Avestan; neuter *a*-stems often become feminine in the plural in Young Avestan, etc.). Especially in poorly transmitted Young Avestan texts, gender is sometimes confused, e.g., *aētaṭ druxš/nasu* ‘this demon of deception/death’ for *aēša druxš/nasuš* or *aētām drujim/ nasāum* (V. 9.45, etc.). This type of mistake may have originated in abbreviated text, e.g., *aēt° dr°/nas°*.

Feminine forms of adjectives of the *a*-declension are declined according to the *ā*-, occasionally the *ī*-declension (e.g., Av. *sūra*- ~ fem. *sūrā*- ‘filled with life-giving strength’; OP *tigra*- ~ *tigrā*- ‘pointed’, but Av. *zarənaēna*-, fem. *zarənaēni*- ‘of gold’, *maniiauuā*-, fem. *maniiauuī*- ‘in the world of thought’, OP *aθangaina*- ~ *aθangaini*- ‘of stone’).

The feminine forms of *u*-stems and consonant stems are declined according to the *ī*-declension (YAv. *vaṇhu*- ~ fem. *vaṇhi*- ‘good’; *po<sup>u</sup>ru*- ~ fem. *po<sup>u</sup>ri*- ‘much, many’ (< \**prH-u*-, \**prHṷ-ī*-); *driyu*- ~ fem. *driui*- ‘poor’; *apāṇk*- ~ *apaši*- ‘backward-turning’; *bə<sup>u</sup>zaṇt*- ~ *bə<sup>u</sup>za<sup>u</sup>ti*- ‘lofty’, *amauuāṇt*- ~ *amauuā<sup>u</sup>ti*- ‘powerful’, *gaomaṇt*- ~ *gaoma<sup>u</sup>ti*- ‘with milk’; *ašāuuān*- ~ *ašāoni*-/*ašāuni*- ‘sustainer of Order’ (beside the irregular form *ašāuuā<sup>u</sup>ri*- Y 58.4); *manah*- ~ *manahi*- ‘having . . . thought’; comparative *maziiah*- ~ *maziiehi*- ‘greater’; perf. ptc. *da<sup>u</sup>uuah*- ~ *da<sup>u</sup>uš*- ‘having put in place, creator’; pres. ptc. athematic *-a<sup>u</sup>ti*-, thematic *-əṇti*- (*-iṇti*-, *-a<sup>u</sup>ṇti*-, *-uuā<sup>u</sup>ṇti*-, *-ii<sup>u</sup>ṇti*-): *vanaṇt*- ~ *vana<sup>u</sup>ṇti*- ‘winning’; OP \**yauda<sup>u</sup>ti*- ‘being in turmoil’ (restored).

Feminine forms of *i*-stem adjectives are declined as feminine *i*-stems (e.g., masc., fem. *āhu<sup>u</sup>ri*-, *māzdaiiasni*-).

Compounds with *\*tanū*- ‘body’ and *\*bāzu*- ‘arm’ are declined as *ū*-stems (fem. acc. pl. *sraotanuuō* ‘having sinuous (?) bodies’, gen. sg. *auruša.bāzuuō* ‘having white arms’).

Neuter adjectives are declined like neuter nouns (e.g., nom.-acc. sg. Av. *sūrəm*, OP *frašam* ‘perfect’, Av. *āhu<sup>u</sup>ri* ‘belonging to Ahura (Mazdā)’, *vohu*, OP *paruv* ‘much’).

Pronouns have the special masculine ~ feminine morphemes *-hm*- ~ *-hṷ*-: Av. dat. masc. *a-hm-āi* ‘him’, OP *a-hm-ata<sup>h</sup>* ‘from there’, fem. gen. OAv. *a-xii-ā*, YAv. *a-ṷh-ā*, OP *a-hay-āyā<sup>h</sup>*.

In Old Avestan, there are also remnants of a pronominal nom. fem. in *\*-ai* (cf. Latin *quae*), e.g., *x<sup>u</sup>ə uruuā x<sup>u</sup>aēcā* . . . *daēnā* ‘his own breath-soul, his own vision-soul’.

The numerals 3 and 4 have inherited feminine forms with a morpheme *-hr*-/*-šr*-: Av. nom. masc. *θrāiiō* ~ fem. *tišrō*, *caθβārō* ~ fem. *catayrō*.

### 3.1.2. Number and case

There are three numbers: singular, dual, plural. Few dual forms are found, but they suffice to show that this category was basically of the old Indo-Iranian type.

Proto-Iranian had eight cases: nominative, vocative, accusative, genitive, dative, ablative, instrumental, locative, all of which are preserved in Avestan, while Old Persian has only six, with the genitive being also used for the dative and the ablative having merged with the instrumental.

Case syncretism is common: voc. ≠ nom. only in the sg.; nom. = acc. in the fem. and neut. pl.; nom. = acc. in the neuter singular, dual, and plural; dat. = abl. in the pl.; dat. = abl. = ins. in the dual; in Old Persian (and Young Avestan?) gen. = loc. in the dual (Old Avestan distinguishes four cases in the dual).

### 3.2. Stem systems

Depending on stems and endings, nouns and adjectives are classified in various declensions. Vowel stems have a vowel before the ending: *a* (“thematic”), *ā*, *i*, *ī*, *u*, *ū*. The *i*- and *u*-stems have ablauting stem formants (\**i*-/*-ai*-, *-u*-/*-au*-). Consonant stems have a consonant before the ending, most commonly *n*, *r*, *h*, but also *p*, *t*, *nt*, *d*, etc. Many consonant stems have ablauting stem formants. The masculine long vowel stems from laryngeal stems (*-ā*- < *-aH*-, *-ī*- < *-iH*-, *-ū*- < *-uH*-) are declined as consonant stems. The “diphthong” (*aē*-, *ao*-) stems behave partly as vowel stems, partly as consonant stems.

#### 3.2.1. Nominal stems ending in vowels

##### *a*-stems

The majority of Avestan vocalic stems are *a*- and *ā*-stems (see below), while other types are relatively rare. In proto-Iranian and Old Avestan the masculine *a*-stems were the only ones to have a full set of different endings in the singular (in all other declensions gen. = abl.). The *a*-declension also has a special gen. sg. ending, \**ahjā*; all other declensions have \**-h*/*-š*. In the dat.-abl. and loc. pl., the thematic vowel is replaced by the diphthong \**-ai*- (> Av. *aē*, *ōi*).

##### *i*- and *u*-stems

The *i*- and *u*-stems fall into two/three categories, according to their ablaut patterns, of which there are three main ones:

On one hand we distinguish between so-called protero- and hystero-kinetic variants of the gen. and dat. singular endings. In the proterokinetic variant the stem formant takes the full grade in the gen. (ending *-š*) and dat. singular; in the hystero-kinetic one it takes the zero grade (gen. ending is \**-ah*). The dat. ending is \**-ai* in both variants.

On the other hand, we distinguish between *i*- and *u*-stems which take the lengthened grade of the stem formant in the strong cases and those that do not. Here the former group is categorized as diphthong stems (see below).

All *i*- and *u*-stems typically take the full grade of the stem formant in the loc. singular and nom. plural. The *u*-stem *pasu*- ‘sheep’ has the hystero-kinetic YAv. nom. pl. *pasuuō*.

Two special *i*-stems are Av. *vi*- ‘bird’, nom. pl. *vaiiō*, gen. pl. *vaiiām*, and the hystero-kinetic Av. *ra*’i- ‘wealth’, in which the original laryngeal produced an “ablauting” pattern *raē*- < \**raHi*- (acc. sg. *raēm*, pl. *raēš*) ~ *rāii*- < \**raHī*- (YAv. gen. sg. = OAv. nom. pl. *rāiiō*; YAv. ins. sg. *raiiā*, gen. pl. *raiiām* with *aii* < *āii*). The feminine Av. *ja*’ni- ‘woman’, according to the

manuscripts, has YAv. gen. *janiiaoš* or *janiioiš*<sup>22</sup> (cf. OInd. *patyuh*, gen. of *pati-* ‘master?’).

A small set of neuter *u*-stems have ambi-/holokinetic ablaut: either full/lengthened grade of the root and zero grade of the stem formant in the nom.-acc. (*āiiu* ‘time/life-span’, *dāuru* ‘wood’, \**zānu* ‘knee’), zero grade of the root and full grade of the stem formant with proterokinetic inflection (only dat. sg.: *yauue/yaoe*; loc. sg. *drao*<sup>o</sup>), or zero grade of both root and stem formant (dat.-abl. pl.: YAv. *žnubiias*<sup>o</sup>; in compounds: OAv. *dar<sup>2</sup>gāiiu-* ‘bestowing long life’ < \**darga-Hju-*, YAv. *darši.dru-* ‘carrying a defiant mace’, YAv. *fra-šnu-* ‘knob-kneed(?)’ for *°xšnu-*?).

#### *aē-* and *ao-* stems

There are two types of diphthong stems: monosyllabic and polysyllabic. Polysyllabic diphthong stems are those *i-* and *u-*stems that have forms with full or long grade of the suffixes: Av. *-i/-aē/-āi-*, and Av. *-u/-ao/-āu(u)-*, OP *-u/-āu/-āv-*. Here these will be called *aē-* and *ao-/au-* stems.

The Avestan *aē-* stems include *haxaē-* ‘companion, friend’, *kauuaē-* ‘poet-priest’, *xštaiuaē-*, a legendary people, *sāuuarhaē-*, a calendrical *ratu*.

The city name YAv. *rayā-* (nom. *raya*, acc. *rayam*; OP ins.-abl. *ragāyā*) apparently has suppletive weak stem *raji-* (abl. *rajōit*).

The *ao-/au-* stems include the Avestan monosyllabic stem *gao-* m., f. ‘cow, bull’, the masculine noun *bāzao-* ‘arm’, masculine adjectives in *°bāzao-* and *°šao-* ‘cattle’, and the feminine nouns Av. *daǰhao-*, OP *dahayau-* ‘land’, Av. *nasao-* ‘carcass, demon of dead bodies’, and *pər<sup>o</sup>sao-* ‘rib’. The monosyllabic *gao-* and the adjectives in *°bāzao-* have long grade in the nom. singular. They all have long or full grade in the nom.-acc. plural.

#### *ā-* and *i-* stems

The feminine *ā-* stems have no ending in the nom. singular, like the *i-* stems, which to some extent appear to have influenced the *ā-* stems. Thus, *ā-* stems add an element \**-āi-*: Av. *-aii-*, OP *-āy-*, before the ending in the gen., abl., dat., ins. (optional), loc. sg., which makes the *ā-* stems largely parallel with the *i-* stems (e.g., gen. \**-āyāh* ~ \**-iyāh*: Av. \**daēn-aii-āh*, OP *taum-āy-āh* < *taumā-* ‘family’; Av. \**nāri-ii-āh* < *nāri-* ‘wife, woman’, OP *bāxtri-iy-āh* < *bāxtri-* ‘Bactria’), and the voc. sg. of *ā-* stems adds *-i*, the ending of the *i-* stems (e.g., Av. *daēne* < \**-ai*, cf. *var<sup>h</sup>-i*).

The feminine *i-* stems fall into two categories, commonly referred to as the “*devi-*” and “*vṛki-* declensions.” Of the two, the *devi-* declension is largely parallel with the *ā-* stems, with an ablauting stem formant: *-i/-yā-*. Most Av. *i-* stems belong to this declension. On the “*vṛki-* declension” see below on laryngeal stems.

In Old Persian, the *p-* stem *āp-* ‘water’ and the *h-* stem *māh-* ‘month’ appear to have been transferred to the *i-* stems: *āpi-*, *māhi-*. The consonant stem *uš-* ‘senses(?)’, usually in the dual *uši-*, appears to have a nom. sg. *ušīyā* beside *uši* (dual?).

22. See the discussion by Pirart 1993, whose conclusions I do not necessarily endorse.

*ū-stems*

See below on laryngeal stems in 3.2.2.

**3.2.2. Nominal stems ending in consonants**

Consonantal noun and adjective stems can end in any consonant except the fricatives, affricates, and glides.

*Stems in labial stops*

The only stems in labial stops are two feminine root nouns in *p*: Av., OP *āp-/ap-*, Av. *kəṛəp-/kəhrp-* ‘body, form’. Of the two, *āp-/ap* has normal ablaut, while *kəṛəp-* has the strong stem *kəhrp-*. The labial becomes *f* before the nom. -š; no loc. plural forms are attested. Before endings with *b*, the labial was assimilated, as in the OP ins.-abl. pl. *abiš* ‘with waters’ with *b < bb < p-b* and the YAv. dat.-abl. pl. *aʔβiiō* ‘for the waters’ with *β < b*.

*Stems in dental stops (d, t, ʔt)*

Stems in *d* include a few nouns (OAv. *išud-* ‘due, debt’, YAv. *pāδ-/paδ-* ‘foot’, OP *θar(a)d-* ‘year’).

Stems in *t* include:

- Root-nouns in *t* from verbal roots ending in a vowel (Av. *°bərət-* ‘carrying, riding’, *°xšnut-* ‘satisfying’) and the neuter *ast-* ‘bone’
- Feminine *tāt*-stems (e.g., *hauruuatāt-* ‘wholeness’, *kahrkatāt-* ‘the term ‘vulture’)
- The *āt*-stems *fraptərəjāt-* ‘winged’ and *rauuascarāt-* ‘roaming the open spaces’, with nom.-acc. pl. neut. *fraptərəjan* and *rauuascarān* (Yt. 8.48)
- The word for ‘grandchild’, with a suppletive paradigm Av. (OP) *napāh-* (nom., voc. sg.), *napāt-* (acc. sg.), *napt-* (loc. pl. *naššū*; fem. *naptī-*, deriv. *naptīia-*), *naptār-* (acc. sg.), *naʔδr-* (acc., gen. sg.)

Stems in *nt* include adjectives in Av. *-ant-*, *-uuant-* (OP *-uvant-*), and *-mant-*, and active present and aorist participles in *-ant-*. The stem formants Av. *-uuant-* and *-mant-* are in complementary distribution: *-mant-* is used after stems in *u* or *ao* and *-uuant-* elsewhere. Av. *mazānt-* is probably an old *Hant*-stem. The *nt*-stems have the most complex stem systems, with as many as three stems. The adjectives have strong stem *-(uu/m)ant-*, weak stem *-(uu/m)at-*, plus a stem in *-(uu/m)ah-* for the nom. (beside *-ant-*) and voc. singular. Participles of thematic verbs have strong stem in *-ant-*, weak stem in *-at-*, but those of thematic verbs have *-ant-* throughout; both have YAv. nom. sg. masc. in *-ō*. Adjectives in *-uuant-* made from *h*-stems combine *-a(ŋ)h* and *uua-* > *-aŋʰ-* (except OAv. fem. *nəmaxʰaʔti-* ‘containing homage’ and the YAv. name *haraxʰaʔti-* ‘Arachosia’, OP *haraʰuvati*). In the strong forms, *-aŋʰant-* regularly became *-aŋhant-*, which the scribes frequently replaced with *-aŋʰant-*.

The final *t* of these stems was assimilated to *d* before endings with *b* (OAv. *azdʰbiš*, *°bərəduʰbiiō*, *drəguuō.dʰbiš < drəguuant-* ‘filled with deception’, etc.), which in Young Avestan was replaced by *ṭ* (*γžāraiaṭ.biiō*). The *t* was lost, by assimilation and simplification, before *s* in the nom. sg. and loc. pl. (OAv. *haʰruuatās*, YAv. *°bərəs*, OAv. *drəguuasū*). The neuter root noun Av. *ast-* ‘bone’ has nom.-acc. pl. (or sg.?) *as°* in OAv. *ascā*. Thematic forms are

common, e.g., Av. *saošiiantaēbiiō* < *saošiiant-* ‘revitalizer’, OP *tunuva* ‘*tahayā* < *tunuvant-* ‘powerful’. Athematic stem forms of thematic verbs may also occur: YAv. *γžāraiait.biiō* < *γžāraiait-* ‘overflowing(?)’, *xšaiiatō* < *xšaiiait-* ‘being in command’, but these may have lost their *n* late in the manuscript tradition.<sup>23</sup>

#### *Stems in velar stops.*

Stems in velar stops (only Av.) comprise a few root nouns (*drug-* ‘deception’, *vak-* ‘word, speech’) and the adjectives in *-ŋk-* (mostly denoting direction: *frāŋk-* ‘forward’, etc.). The root nouns with vowel *a* have normal ablaut. The velar becomes *-x-* before the nom. *-š*; no loc. pl. forms are attested. Before endings with *b*, the velar should have been assimilated to *\*.yβ-* (*\*.yβ-*), but this sound combination is not found at all in Avestan. Instead we have forms apparently built on the nom. sg.: dat. abl. *vāγžibiiō*, ins. *\*vāγžibiš* (only *vayžibiš* Fragment *Nirgāngistan* twice), with “combined” *i*-epenthesis and anaptyxis (*-yžbii-* > *\*.yž<sup>o</sup>bii-* > *-yž<sup>i</sup>bii-*).

The *nk*-stems originally had a suffix *-Hānk-/Hānc-/Hŋk-/Hŋc-*, which, combined with preceding *a* or *i* produced ablauting suffixes *-ānk-/ānc-/āk-/āc-* (*-ac-*), *-i<sup>o</sup>ānk-/i<sup>o</sup>ānc-/i<sup>o</sup>k-/i<sup>o</sup>c-*. The stop itself only appears in the neut. nom.-acc. sg., which ends in *-āg<sup>o</sup>t* (it has been suggested that this may not be directly from *\*.ākt*, but a way of writing final *-āk* with a non-released final *-k*, like the final *-t*).<sup>24</sup>

#### *Stems in n*

Stems in nasals comprise stems in *n* (common) and *m* (rare).

The *n*-stems includes several subsets: root nouns, *uan-* and *man-*stems, which are in complementary distribution (*m* after *u*), *Han-*stems, *ian-*stems, and *in-*stems. All these, except the *in-*stems, show ablaut in the stem formant: *ān/an/n/a* (< *ŋ*), *uuān/uuan/un/uua*, *mān/man/mn/ma*.

The zero grade *un* of the Av. *uuan-*stems combines with a preceding *a* > *aon* and a preceding *u* > *un* (*yuan-/yun-*). Because of the morphophonological vagaries of *u*, the *uan-*stems are sometimes no longer recognizable as such, e.g., Av. *span-/spa-/sūn-* ‘dog’ (< *\*cuan-/cun-/cun-*; *ruθban-* ‘entrails’ < *\*ruθuan-*; *aδban-* ‘road’ < *\*ad<sup>h</sup>uan-*). Av. *aθaruan-* ‘priest’ has strong stem *āθrauuuan-*, weak stem *aθa<sup>u</sup>run-*. Some *uan-*stems have voc. sg. forms in *-um* (*-əm*), with the final *-n* apparently assimilated to the preceding labial *u(ə)*, e.g., *ašāum* < *ašauuan-* ‘sustainer of order’, *yum* < *yuan-* ‘a youth’.

The masculine adjective Av. *θri.zafan-* ‘with three mouths’ has nom. sg. *θri.zafā*, and short *a* in the acc. like *vər<sup>o</sup>θrajā*, *°janəm* ‘obstruction smasher’, but the word is probably a *uuan-*stem *\*θri.zafuan-*, hence its voc. sg. *θri.zafəm* (for *°zafum?*).

There are a few *Han-*stems, among them *māθrān-* ‘poet’ < *\*manθra-Han-* and, possibly, *mar<sup>o</sup>tān-/mar<sup>o</sup>θn-* if < *\*marta-Han-/martaHn-/martHn-* ‘mortal’.

23. Instead of *nt* (𐬨𐬀), many mss. write *nt* (𐬨𐬀), in which the *n* is more exposed to being lost.

24. Note that it is often difficult to determine whether forms such as *parāca*, *fracā*, *vica*, *tarasca* are from the *nk*-stems or contain *-ca* ‘and’.



There is one masculine Av. *iiān*-stem (the proper name *fraγrasiiān*-), and a small number of feminine ones (*kaniian*- 'young woman', *kax<sup>v</sup>ar<sup>ai</sup>δiiān*-, kind of female sorcerer, and *kāiiaδiiān*-/*kaiie<sup>i</sup>δiiān*-, kind of female sorcerer). The feminine *\*iiān*-stems have various forms from stems in *-iiā-* (nom. *ka<sup>i</sup>ne*), *-ī-* (gen. sg. *kaniia<sup>i</sup>*, *kax<sup>v</sup>ar<sup>ai</sup>δiiā<sup>s</sup>°*, *kāi<sup>i</sup>δiiā<sup>s</sup>°*, acc. pl. *kaniiō*), or *-īn-* (voc. sg. *kax<sup>v</sup>ar<sup>ai</sup>δa<sup>i</sup>ne* < °*δi<sup>i</sup>ne*(?), acc. sg. *ka<sup>i</sup>ninəm*, gen. sg./nom. pl. *ka<sup>i</sup>ninō*). The gen. pl. forms in *-inəm* are from *-ī-* or *-īn-*stems.

There are a few Av. *in*-stems (Av. *fraxšnīn*- 'having foreknowledge', YAv. *par<sup>ai</sup>nīn*- 'winged', etc.).

The heteroclitic neuter *r/n*-stems have *r*-stem nom.-acc. sg. and *r*- or *n*-stem nom.-acc. pl., e.g., *aiiār<sup>ai</sup>* 'day', gen. sg. *aiiā* (< *-aṅh*), nom.-acc. pl. OAv. *aiiār<sup>ai</sup>*, YAv. *aiiān*; OP *\*vazar*, ins.-abl. *vašnā*.

#### Stems in *m*

There are a few *m*-stems (only Av.): the archaic and irregular *zam*- 'earth' and *ziām*- 'winter', which form the nom. and acc. sg. as *ā*-stems, and the other cases from full grades (the disyllabic loc. sg. *zəmī*) or zero grades *z<sup>ai</sup>m*- and *zim*- (note ins. sg. *z<sup>ai</sup>mā* with the long *-ā* of monosyllables); the semantically related *ham*- 'summer' (FO 25b loc. sg. *hama* for *\*hami*); and *dam*- 'house' (OAv. gen. sg. *dānṅ<sup>o</sup>*, OYAv. loc. sg. *dām*, YAv. *dāmi*). By regular sound developments, both *zam*- and *ham*- should have had weak stems *\*sm*-; cf. *upasma*- '(living) in the earth'. Whether OP *uzmayāpatiy* (*kar*-) 'impale' contains *zam*- is uncertain.

#### Stems in *h*

The *h*-stems (*ah*-stems) comprise several common neuter nouns (*manah*- 'thought', etc.), including stems with laryngeals (*dāh*- gift' < *\*da<sup>h</sup>ah*-), and a few masculine nouns and adjectives. Most of the masculine forms are in compounds with neuter *h*-stems (*humanah*- 'having good thoughts', etc.).

The *h*-stems also include some root nouns, active perfect participles (only Av.) in *-uuah*- (strong stem *-uuāṅh*-, middle stem *-uuah*-, weak stem *-uš*-), and comparatives in Av. *-iiāh*-, OP *-īyah*- (strong stem Av. *-iiāh*-, OP *-īyāh*-, weak stem Av. *-iiāh*-).

#### Stems in sibilants

Stems in sibilants include stems in *s*, *z*, and *š*. The *s*- and *z*-stems are original stems in IIr. *\*ć*, *ǰ* (IE *ĕ*, *ǵ*), while the *š*-stems are IIr. *s*-stems with *š* by ruki. The *s* and *z* are assimilated to the nom. sg. *-š* (OAv. *maš* < *maz*- 'great', YAv. *spaš* < *spas*- 'spy', *barš* < *barz*- 'high'). The sibilants are assimilated to *ž* before endings with *b* (Av. *viž<sup>i</sup>biio* < *vis*- 'town'; *sna<sup>i</sup>θižbiia* < *sna<sup>i</sup>θiš*- 'weapon').

#### Stems in laryngeals

Laryngeal stems end in vowel plus laryngeal (*\*aH* > *ā*, *\*iH* > *ī*, *\*uH* > *ū*). The laryngeal *\*iH*-/*i*-stems are represented in Avestan and Old Persian by feminine forms of adjectives in Av. *-aēna*-, OP *-aina*-: Av. *-aēni*-, OP *-aini*- and Av. female patronymics in *-f<sup>ai</sup>δri*- 'whose father (is)'.

The *ū*-stems are represented by OAv. *fs<sup>3</sup>ratū-* ‘?’ and OYAv., OP fem. *tanū-* ‘body’ (on Av. *hizū-* ‘tongue’, see below).

Typically these stems add the nominative singular endings directly to the stem: nom. \**daH-s* ‘giver, placer’ > Ir. \**dāh* > Av. *maz-dā* ‘he who places (all things) in his mind, all-knowing’, OP \**maz-dāh*; \**jiH-š* ‘living’, \**suH-š* ‘giving life-giving strength’ > Av. *jiš, suš*; Av., OP *tanūš* ‘body’.

Before endings in vowels, the laryngeal was lost with hiatus (or inserted glide) in Old Avestan, but contraction in Young Avestan and Old Persian: acc. sg. \**mazdaH-am* > Av. *mazdām* (trisyllabic), OP \**mazdām*; \**jiH-am*, \**suH-am* > \**ji-am*, \**su-am* > YAv. *ōjīm, ōsūm*; gen. sg. \**mazdaH-as* > \**maz-da’ah*, OAv. *mazdā* (trisyllabic) > YAv. *mazdā* (disyllabic) (OP remade into \**mazdāha<sup>h</sup>*); nom.-acc. pl. \**jiH-as/-ns*, \**suH-ah/-ns* > \**ji’ah*, \**su’ah* > OAv. *ōjiiō, ōsuuō*; nom.-acc. dual \**priH-ā* > *friia* ‘dear’.

The masculine *ā*-stem Av. *paṇtā-* ‘road’ < \**pantaH-* is characterized by holokinetic ablaut. In addition, when the laryngeal came directly after the *t* of the stem and before the vowel of an ending, the *t* became Ir. *θ*: nom. sg. \**pantāH-s* > \**pantāh* > *paṇtā*, acc. sg. \**pantāH-m* > *paṇtām*, gen. sg./acc. pl. \**pṇtH-as* > \**paθah* > *paθō*. In Old Persian, the word presumably became a feminine *i*-stem (acc. sg. *paθīm*).

Av. masc. *hizuuā-/hizū-* ‘tongue’ has nom.(?) and acc. from the strong stem: Av. acc. *hizuuām*; other forms from the weak stem; the ins. is YAv. *hizuuō* (with labialization of *-ua* > *-uō*). In compounds we find *hizuuā*: OAv. *hizuuā.uxδa-* (= nom.?), etc. In Old Persian, this noun became an *n*-stem: acc. *hazānam*.

#### OP *ā*-stems

Old Persian has three masculine *ā*-stems: *a<sup>h</sup>uramazdā-*, *xšayaqršā-* (or *xšayāršā-*) ‘Xerxes’, and *artaxšačā-* ‘Artaxerxes’. Of these three, *xšayaqršā-* was originally an *n*-stem, *xšayaqršan-*, and *artaxšačā-* probably an *a*-stem.

#### *r*-stems

Among the *r*-stems, the root-nouns (OAv. *gar-* ‘song’, *sar-* ‘union’), words denoting kinship (OAv. *p<sup>(i/a)</sup>tar-*, YAv. *pitar-*, ‘father’, *mātar-* ‘mother’, OAv. *dug<sup>3</sup>dar-/YAv. duydar-* ‘daughter’, *x<sup>v</sup>aṇhar-* ‘sister’, *brātar-* ‘brother’, *naptar-* ‘grandson’), and *nar-* ‘man, hero’ have full grade in strong cases, while agent nouns in *-tar-* (e.g., *pātar-* ‘protector’, *dātar-* ‘maker, creator’) and *star-* ‘star’ have lengthened grade.

The *r*-stems behave partly like vocalic and partly like consonantal stems. Like vocalic stems they have *-nš* in the acc. pl. (e.g., *nər<sup>3</sup>š*), but like consonantal stems they form their nom. singular by lengthening the final syllable and dropping the final *r*, e.g., *dātṛ-*: nom. *dātā* > YAv. *dāta*. Like *i-*, *u-*, and *n*-stems, they have both protero- and hysterokinetic gen. singular forms (e.g., YAv. gen. *narš*, but *piθrō*, dat. *fi<sup>3</sup>δrōi*).

There are a few neuter *r*-stems (*aodar-* ‘cold’: OAv. gen. sg. *aodər<sup>3</sup>š* and YAv. ins. sg. *aodra* [*Herbedistan* 17.3]; YAv. *vadar-* ‘weapon’: nom.-acc. sg. *vadar<sup>3</sup>* (< \**uadṛ*), YAv. *vaṇhar-* ‘spring’: loc. sg. *vaṇri* FO 8). On neuter *r/n*-stems, see above on *n*-stems.

The word *ātar-* ‘fire’ was probably originally a neuter *r*-stem, with nom.-acc. sg. *\*ātr-*. When it became a masculine noun, the endings were simply added onto this form: *\*ātr-š*, *\*ātr-am*, which produced the nom. *ātarš* and acc. *ātrəm* (Hoffmann 1988: 58).

### 3.2.3. Suppletive stem systems

There are several suppletive stem systems, of various kinds:

1. Alternating vowel and consonant stems: Av. *zā-/zam-* ‘earth’, *ziiā-/ziiam-* ‘winter’ (see above); OAv. *sauua-* (sg. loc. pl. nom.-acc., ins.), *sauuah-* (sg. nom., ins., gen., pl. gen.) ‘life-giving strength’, *ušā-/ušah-* ‘dawn’: sg. nom. OYAv. *ušā*, YAv. sg. acc. *ušam*, *ušāṛhəm*, abl. *ušaiiāt*, pl. loc. *ušahuua*; YAv. *kaniīā-/ka’nīn-* ‘young woman’: sg. nom. *ka’ne* < *\*kaniā*, acc. *kaniyam*, *ka’nīnəm*, gen. *kaniīā*, *ka’nīnō*, pl. nom. *ka’nīnō*, acc. *kaniīō*, dat.-abl. *ka’nibiīō*; OP *āpī-(?)/āp-* ‘water’

2. Alternating consonant stems: neuter *r/n*-stems (see above); °*carat-* ‘walking’: nom.-acc. pl. °*caran*; *napah-/napat-/naptar-* ‘grandson’: sg. nom. YAv. *napā*, OP *napā* (< *-āh*), YAv. voc. *napō* (< *-ah*), acc. *napātəm*, *naptārəm*, *napōdrəm*, gen. *naptō*, *napōdrō*, pl. loc. OAv. *naṣṣū*

3. Analogy: YAv. *sāstar-/sāθr-* (for *-str-* in analogy with other *tar*-stems) ‘(false) teacher’

### 3.3. Endings

The case endings are mostly those inherited from Indo-Iranian. Special Avestan features include the proterokinetic genitive forms in *i-*, *u-*, *r-*, and *n*-stems (e.g., genitive singular *\*ai-š*, *-au-š*, *\*ar-š*, *\*arṣ-h*), which are more common than in Old Indic and may represent an Avestan generalization of a type less common in Indo-Iranian; alternatively, Old Indic has lost this type.

Among the typically Young Avestan endings is the generalized ablative singular ending *-t*, by which the gen. is distinguished from the abl. in all declensions in the singular. Old Persian has this form (*-auv* < *\*-aut*) beside the ablative = genitive (*-auš*).

Another Young Avestan feature is the addition of a final *-a* to the ablative singular and locative singular and plural endings, which is presumably identical with the Old Avestan particle *ā*, which is used to emphasize ‘here and now/there and then’ and is combined with a variety of local (temporal) cases. In Old Persian, a final *-ā* may be added to the loc. singular and plural.

In post-Old Persian the monosyllabic endings seem to have been largely lost or merged into a single vocalic ending, written *-a*, *-am*, *-ā*, *-ām*.

#### *Nominative singular masculine/feminine*

In Indo-Iranian (and Indo-European), the nom. singular of masculine and feminine was formed in various ways:

1. By adding the ending *\*-h/-š/-s* to the stem
2. By lengthening the last vowel of the stem and dropping the final consonant

3. By both lengthening the vowel of the stem and adding the ending \*-h/-š/-s
4. By using the stem without further characterization

*Vowel stems with ending \*-h/-š:*

The regular ending of the *a-*, *i-*, and *u-/ao-* declensions was \*-h/-š. The Indo-Iranian forms were therefore \*-ah, \*-iš, \*-uš/-āuš.

In Old Persian, the final \*-h was lost without trace; in Avestan, it caused backing and rounding of the preceding vowels: \*-ah > -āh > -ō, \*-āh > -ā. In sandhi, the *s* was retained, and the endings were Av. -as° and -ās° (for \*-ās), respectively. The ending -ā is Old Avestan only; it is typical of the pronouns (yā, kā), but is occasionally found in nouns (and other grammatical forms in \*-ah). The ending -š survived intact in both Avestan and Old Persian.

The laryngeal stems (*ā-*, *ū-*, *ī-* stems [yṛki-type]) also take this ending, e.g., °dā (sandhi -ās°), tanuš, zarənaēniš 'of gold'.

The feminine *ā-* and *ī-* stems (*devi*-type) have no ending in Avestan; in Old Persian, the *ī-* stems have -īy and -iš.

*Consonant stems with ending \*-s/-š:*

The original ending -s is preserved only in dental stems, where the combinations -ts, -ds > \*-ss > \*-s (there are no nominative singular forms of *d*-stems).

Among *nt*-stems, the expected form -as is found in a few words (YAv. *cu-uas* 'how much?', *fšuiias* 'husbandman'). In most Young Avestan adjectives and present participles, \*-ant-s > \*-anss appears to have been simplified to \*-ans (or the *t* was lost; cf. the *nk*-stems, below) early enough to become \*-aṅh (or the form was analogically remade), which developed as in the accusative plural (note also YAv. nom. sg. *cū*, presumably < \*cuuaṅh). The nom.-acc. singular neuter has athematic -at < -ṛt, thematic -ən < -ant (OAv. *yasō.xiiēn* < \*yasahjan 'seeking glory', YAv. *manaiēn* 'resembling').

The *t*-stem *napat-* and the *uuaṅt-* and *mant-* stem adjectives have nominative and vocative singular from *h*-stems (Av. *napā*, OP *napā*; OAv. *drəguuā*, OP *tunuvā<sup>h</sup>*; YAv. *xratumā* 'wise').

In all other consonant stems the ending becomes -š. The labial *p* becomes the spirant *f* (YAv. *āfš*, *kə<sup>ə</sup>fš*). Velars (*k*, *g*) become the spirant -x- (YAv. *vāxš* < *vak-*; *druxš* < *drug-*) except in the *nk*-stems, where the -k/x- was lost (YAv. *apaš* 'backward-turning', *paiti.iiāš* 'turning toward', *viš* < \*vīš 'going to all sides'). The *nk*-stems may have had lengthened grade (as in Old Indic), but the Av. *a* is ambiguous.

The *s-* and *z-* stems were from Indo-Iranian stems in \*-ć- and -ǰ-; in the nominative singular the final clusters (\*-ćš and -ǰš) were simplified to -š according to the general rules (YAv. *spasš* < *spas-*; OAv. *maš* < *maz-*; YAv. *barš* < *bə<sup>ə</sup>z-*).

The nom. *ātarš* of the originally neuter *r*-stem *ātar-* is probably an analogical formation (see above on *r*-stems).

In Old Persian, no forms of this type are attested. It is indeed not certain what would happen to the final clusters, but in line with the general avoidance of final consonants, they would probably be felt as inadmissible

and possibly be lost.<sup>25</sup> This would in turn probably result in a whole-sale analogical remaking of the nominative or shift into a different stem class. This seems to be the case of the two root nouns *āp-* and *māh-*, the nom. sg. forms of which would be *ā(fš)* and *mā<sup>h</sup>* and which, apparently, were both transferred into the *i*-declension (like the irregular *pantā-/paθ-*, > OP *paθī-*): *āpī-* (nom. *āpī<sup>o</sup>* or *āpīš<sup>o</sup>*) and *māhi-* (gen.-dat. *māhiyā*).<sup>26</sup>

#### Vocative singular

With the exception of feminine *ā*-stems, the vocative singular is identical with the stem, with the stem formant in the full or zero grade. Thus, *a*-stems have *\*-a* (OAv. *ahurā*, *mazdā* < *\*mazdaH*, OP *martiyā* ‘man’, *marikā* ‘young man’); *i*-stems have *\*-ai* (OAv. *ārma<sup>tē</sup>* ‘humility’, YAv. *hāuuane*, ‘genius of the time before dawn’). Consonant stems with ablauting suffix have zero grade (OAv., YAv. *ātar<sup>o</sup>*, YAv. *nar<sup>o</sup>*, *pitar<sup>o</sup>*, *dātar<sup>o</sup>* with *-ar<sup>o</sup>* < *\*-r<sup>o</sup>*; *humanō*, *druuō*; *napah-*: *napō*; *uuan*-stems: *ašāum*, *āθraom*, *yum*, *θrizafəm*; see above §3.2.2). When a consonant stem does not show ablaut, the vocative = nominative.

In Young Avestan, the full grade ending *\*-au* in the *u-* (*ao-*) stems is normally realized as *-uuō*, since the vocative does not admit enclitics (*ratuuō* < *ratu-* ‘model’, *ə<sup>o</sup>zuuō* < *ə<sup>o</sup>zu-* ‘upright, straight’), but appears as *-ao* (?) in the compounds *gaohudā* ‘O cow giving good gifts’, *gaospənta* ‘O life-giving cow’. After *i*, the ending appears as *-ō*, presumably by assimilation or by simplification of the *i*u-group (*maniiō* < *maniiu-* ‘spirit’, *vaiiō* < *vaiiu-*, name of a god).

The *i*-stems (*devi*-type) had Ilr. *\*-i* and the *ā*-stems *\*-ai*, perhaps with the *-i* of the *i*-stems; *aši-* ‘reward’ has the irregular voc. *aši* (e.g., *aši sīre* ‘O beautiful Aši!’). In *arəduui sūre* ‘O Arəduui Sūrā’, the ending is usually long in the manuscripts.

Initial stress may be responsible for the lengthening of the *a* in the first syllable of *zā<sup>i</sup>re* (< *zā<sup>i</sup>ri-* ‘tawny’) and the shortening of the *ā* in the second syllable of *spitama* (< *spitāma-* ‘having swollen strength(?)’, standing epithet of Zarathustra).

In Old Persian, only the vocative of *a*-stems is attested.

#### Accusative singular masculine and feminine

The endings of the singular are *-m* in vowel stems and *-əm* in consonant stems (OAv. *drujə<sup>m</sup>*). The manuscripts are not consistent in writing short or long *-im/-īm* and *-um/-ūm*. Old Avestan seems to prefer the long variants before *-m*.

The accusative singular of ablauting stems—diphthong and consonant stems—typically takes the long grade (OAv. *vācəm*).

The *iia*-stems regularly have OAv. *-iiəm*, OYAv. *-ī<sup>m</sup>* (e.g., OYAv. *mašim* < *mašīia-* ‘man’, OAv. *aniiəm* and *a<sup>n</sup>nīm* < *aniia-* ‘other’, YAv. *ma<sup>i</sup>šim*

25. The only OP word ending in *-s* is the reconstructed, hence doubtful, *\*daθa<sup>s</sup>*.

26. OP <p-θ-i-m> and <a-p-i-<sup>o</sup>> could in principle be short *i*-stems. The nom. *āpī(š)* is only in <a-p-i-š-i-m> which can be read as *āpī<sup>š</sup>-šim* or *āpīš-šim* ‘the water (carried) him (away)’.

< *ma'diia-* 'middle'). The *uua*-stems have YAv. *-ūm* (e.g., *drūm* < *druua-* 'healthy').

In the *ao*-stems, the acc. sg. *daṛhaom* < *-āyam* 'land' is the 'normal' form (only in Yt. 10). The form *daxiium* is OAv., but is also found in the YAv. formula *nmānəmca vīšəmca zaṇtumca daxiiumca* 'the house, the town, the tribe, and the land'. The forms *nasāum* < *nasao-* 'carcass' and *pəṛsāum* < *pəṛsao-* 'rib' occur only in the *Videvdad*. There seems to be no system in the distribution of the forms *nasāum* and *nasum*. The monosyllabic *gao*-has acc. sg. *gam* (cf. acc. pl. *gā*).

The form *auuāntəm* 'that much' was probably influenced by *mazāntəm* < *mazānt-* 'big' (Gershevitch 1967: 152).

The *m*-stems *zam-* and *ziām-* form their nominative and accusative singular from the stems *zā-* and *ziā-*: *zam*, *ziām*.

#### *Nominative-accusative neuter singular*

Neuter stems take no endings in the nominative-accusative singular, except the *a*-declension, where the ending is *-əm* (Av. *-əm*) = masc. acc. sg. The *i*- and *u*-stems have weak grade of the stem formants (*-i*, *-u*). The nominative-accusative singular neuter of thematic participles has the expected ending *-ən* < *\*-ant*, that of athematic verbs is *-at* as in adjectives. The *Hant*-stem *mazānt-* may have had *\*mazāt* (Yt. 10.44, mss. *°āt* and *°āδa*).

#### *Instrumental singular*

The ending of the instrumental singular is *-ā* in all declensions, including in hysterokinetic *aē*-stems and *u*-stems (*-iā*, *-uā*), but excepting the *i*- and *u*-stems, which have *-ī* and *-ū*.

In the *ā*-declension, forms with *-aii-* are most common (YAv. *-aiia*), but forms with no ending (YAv. *-a*) are also found; the *i*-stems have only *\*-iā* (Av. *-iiā*, OP *-iyā*).

The masculine *ā*-stem *paṇtā-* has ins. sg. *paθa*.

The instrumental singular of *zam-* is *z<sup>o</sup>mā* with long final *ā* (*pa'ti āiia z<sup>o</sup>mā* '[all] over this earth'), which indicates that it is monosyllabic (cf. OInd. *jmā*).

#### *Dative singular*

The dative ending in the singular was *\*-ai*, which merged with the stem vowel of *a*-stems to form the ending *-āi*. In Old Avestan, *āi* can be followed by *ā* (*-āi.ā*), which is commonly assumed to be for *\*āiā* (cf. OInd. *-āya*).

The *ā*-stems have Av. *-aiiāi*, the *i*-stems Av. *-iiāi*. Only *gaēθā-* '(world of) living beings' regularly has YAv. *gaēθiiāi* (in the mss.) rather than *\*gaēθaiiāi*. This is no doubt due to the frequent expression *astuuaiθiiāi gaēθiiāi* < *astuuai'ti- gaēθā-* 'the bony world of living beings'. In metrical texts *gaēθiiāi* counts three syllables.

In other declensions the ending *\*-ai* became OAv. *-ōi*, OYAv. *-aē<sup>o</sup>*, *-iē<sup>o</sup>*. The palatalization is seen clearly in the ending *-aṛhe* of the *h*-stems.

The proterokinetic *i*-stems have dative in OAv. *-ōiiōi*, YAv. *-ōē*, *-aiiaē<sup>o</sup>*, while hysterokinetic *i*-stems and the *aē*-stems have OAv. *-iiaē<sup>o</sup>*, YAv. *-iē*.

The proterokinetic *u*-stems and the *ao*-stems have dative in OAv. *-auuōi*, *-auuē*, YAv. *-auue/-aoe*. The hystero-kinetic *u*-stems and the *ū*-stems have *-uiiē* < *\*-uui*.

In the hystero-kinetic YAv. *u*-stems in *-tu-*, the original ending *-tūai* became *-θβε* before *-ūai* developed to *\*-uuiē* > *-uiiē*, and in stems in *-hu-* the ending *-ue* combined with the preceding *-ṛh-* to form *-ṛʰhe*. In Old Avestan, this development did not take place.<sup>27</sup>

#### *Genitive, genitive-ablative singular*

The most common ending in Indo-Iranian was *\*-h/-š*, which behaved like the nom. *\*-h/-š*. This *\*-h/-š* was sometimes added directly to the stem, sometimes preceded by an additional *-a-*.

The only exception is the *a*-stems, which have the ending *\*-ahīa*, OAv. *-ahiiā* (*-axiiā*), YAv. *-ahe*, OP *-ahayā*. The YAv. gen. ending is found in OAv. *zaraθuštrahē*. The YAv. form *ašahīhācā* is perhaps archaizing.

The *ā*-stems have Av. *-aiiā*, OP *-āyā<sup>h</sup>*, and the *i*-stems Av. *-iīā*, OP *-īyā<sup>h</sup>*.

Proterokinetic *i*- and *u*-stems have full grade of the stem formant: OAv. *-ōiš* and *-ūiš*, YAv. *-ōiš* and *-aoš*, OP *-aiš* and *-auš*. Many YAv. *u*-stems take the OAv. ending *-ūiš* instead of or beside *-aoš*, principally words “with strong Old Avestan connection.”

The consonant stems (including many *n*-stems), the hystero-kinetic *u*-, *n*-, and *r*-stems, and the *ū*-stems take the ending *\*-ah*, which behaved like the nom. sg. of *a*-stems.

The *u*-stem *ratu-* has YAv. gen. sg. *raθβō*, but the archaizing(?) form *ratūiš* is also found (*Vispered* 9.6).

Proterokinetic *n*- and *r*-stems took the simple ending *\*-h/-š*. In the *n*-stems the resulting ending *\*-aṛh* developed as in the acc. pl. masc. of *a*-stems (YAv. *bar<sup>3</sup>smā* < *bar<sup>3</sup>smān-*, sacred twigs, *barsom*, etc.). The *r*-stems had *\*-ṛš*: OAv. *-ər<sup>3</sup>š*, YAv. *-arš* (OAv. *nər<sup>3</sup>š*, YAv. *narš*, *sāstarš*, etc.).

#### *Ablative singular*

The ablative singular was originally identical with the genitive in all declensions except the *a*-declension, where the characteristic ending was *\*-t*, before which the stem vowel of the *a*-stems was lengthened to give *-āt*, *-āat* before enclitic (OAv. *zaošāt* < *zaoša-* ‘pleasure’, *virāat* < *vira-* ‘man’).

In Young Avestan, the *-t* spread to the other declensions (probably also in OP), where the ablative is obtained by substituting *-t* for the original *\*-h/-š* of the genitive, e.g., *daēnā-* ‘vision soul’: *\*daēnaiiā-h* ⇒ *daēnaiiāt*, *bər<sup>3</sup>zant-* ‘tall’: *\*bər<sup>3</sup>zata-h* ⇒ *bər<sup>3</sup>zataṭ*, *gairi-* ‘mountain’: *garōi-š* ⇒ *garōiṭ*, *bar<sup>3</sup>smān-* ‘barsom’: *\*barsman-h* ⇒ *\*barsmant* > *bar<sup>3</sup>smən*, *nar-* ‘man’: *nər<sup>3</sup>-š* ⇒ *nər<sup>3</sup>-t*.

In Young Avestan, an *-a* may be added to the ending (*-āda*, *-aēda*[?], *-mānda*), apparently with the specific meaning ‘all the way to, up to and including(?)’, throughout: *xšaθrāda* ‘throughout (Yima’s) reign’,

27. In late manuscripts we sometimes find *at* instead of *aē* (e.g., *-aiiatca* for *-aiiaēca*), which may be a graphic error: *-at-* instead of *-aē-* .

*pa'tiš.x'ar<sup>n</sup>nāda* 'up to and including the jaw(?)', *drujō vaēsmənda* '(all the way) to the entrance hall of the Lie' (Yt. 10.86).<sup>28</sup>

#### Locative singular

The locative singular is formed in one of two ways:

1. With the ending *i*, with or without an additional *-ǎ* (> Av. *-iiǎ*, YAv. *-ie*, OP *-iyā*). Note that this *-ǎ* makes a separate syllable (*-i'ǎ*, not *\*-iǎ*). In the *a*-stems the ending *-i* combines with the stem vowel to produce the diphthong *\*-ai* (OAv. *-ōi* or *-iē*, YAv. *-ie*; in sandhi: OYAv. *-ae°*).

The *ā*-stems have *\*-āiǎ*: YAv. *-aiia*, OP *-āyā*, and the *i*-stems *\*-iǎ*: YAv. *-ie(?)*, OP *-iyā*.

Consonant stems sometimes take the full grade, sometimes the zero grade. In Young Avestan, the ending is *-i* or *-e*, which is either < *-iia* or the thematic ending; Old Persian has *-iyā*. Young Avestan forms such as *apaiia* (< *ap-*) and *ašauuanaiia* are probably for *\*-iia* with epenthesis. The *ū*-stems had *-i* (YAv. *tanuuī*).

2. With full or lengthened grade of the stem formant and no ending. Thus the *i*-stems have the ending *-ǎ* < *\*ā(i)*, and the *u*- and *ao*-stems have the ending *\*-au* (> YAv. *-uuō*, *-ao°*, *-auua*, OP *-avā*). In Old Avestan, the original ending may have been *-ao* (*-aō*), as well, which is occasionally found in good manuscripts. More often we find *-āu*, *-ā*, or *-ā*. Of these I suspect *-āu* and *-ā* are rationalizations of *-ao* (*-aō*). The ending *-ā* could be genuine, corresponding to OInd. *-ā* beside *-āu*, but OInd. *-ā* may be secondary after the *i*-stems.<sup>29</sup>

The *n*- (*-r/n-*) and *m*-stems take the ending *-i* or no ending: OAv. *anmēni* 'breath, wind', *cašma'nī* and *cašman* 'eye', *dām* < *dam-* 'house', YAv. *aiian* < *aiiar/n-* 'day', *dām* and *dāmi*, *zəmi* (disyllabic).

#### Nominative-vocative-accusative dual

The endings of the nom.-voc.-acc. dual are:

Av., OP *-ǎ* in masculine *a*-stems (OAv. *yēmā* 'twins', YAv. *gaoša* 'ears', OP *gaušā*), diphthong stems (OAv. *gāuuā*, YAv. *°gāuuu* < *gao-* 'cow, bull', *bāzauua* < *bāzao-* 'arm'), and masculine and feminine consonant stems (OAv. *hauruuatātā amətatātā* 'wholeness and undyingness', YAv. *āpa* 'water (and plants)', *pāda* 'feet', *rasmana* 'battle lines', *nara* 'men', *nāṅha* 'nose < nostrils', *bəzanta* 'tall')

OAv. *-ōi*, OYAv. *-ē* in feminine *ā*-stems (OAv. *ubē* 'both', YAv. *uruuāre* '(water and) plants' and neuter *a*-stems (OAv. *šiiəθanōi* 'two (kinds of) actions')

Av. *-ī* in neuter consonant stems (OAv. *manahi°* 'two [kinds of] thoughts', *sāx'əni*[?] 'two \*instructions', YAv. *\*bara'ṅti*[?] 'carrying' V. 3.11, *x'a'riiṅti* 'edible, tasty[?]' Yt. 19.32; Skjærvø 1999b: 186–87), perhaps OP *ušīy* 'senses(?)'

28. See Vaan 2001. Forms in *-aeḍa* are less certain (perhaps *\*aiβišitaēḍaca* and *\*upašitaēḍaca* in Yt. 19.6).

29. Examples of loc. sg. forms in *-ō* are cited in the handbooks (e.g., Hoffmann and Forsman 1996: 130) but these are all in texts with poor manuscript transmission. See Skjærvø 2005.



The *i*-, *ī*-, and *u*-stems have no endings (OAv. *x<sup>v</sup>iti<sup>o</sup> ənəti* < \**hu-/an-iti* ‘good going and non-going’, *azi* ‘pregnant’, *maniiū* ‘spirits’, YAv. *baoiδi* ‘(firewood and) incense’, *saṛhauuāci ar<sup>o</sup>nauuāci* ‘(the sisters) Saṛhauuāci and Arnauuāci’, *pasu vira* ‘beasts and men’).

#### *Dative-ablative-instrumental dual*

The dative-ablative-instrumental dual ends in *-biia* (OAv. *-biīā*), for which we sometimes find YAv. *-βe* or *-uue*, with *-e* < *-iia*.<sup>30</sup>

#### *Genitive dual*

The genitive dual ending was \**-āh* (Av. *-ā*) preceded by *-aii-* in the *a*- and *ā*-stems (Av. *-aiiā*, OP *-āiiā<sup>h</sup>*).

#### *Locative dual*

The locative dual ending was OAv. *-ō* (*-aiiō*, *-ōiiō*).

In Old Persian, the genitive = locative dual.

#### *Nominative-vocative plural*

The nom.-voc. plural ending of masculine and neuter *a*-stems was proto-Ir. *ā* (but OInd. *-ās*). The nom.-voc. plural of YAv. *aməša- spənta-* is *aməšā spənta* beside the more frequent *aməšā spənta*. Note also *a're* < *a'riia-* ‘Aryan’). Masculine *a*-stems have the alternative ending \**-āhah*: Av. *-āṛhō*, OP *-āha<sup>h</sup>*.

The nom.-voc.-acc. plural ending of feminine *ā*- and *ī*-stems was \**-h/-š*, Av. *-ā*, *-iš*.

The nom.-voc. plural ending of other stems was \**-ah* for both masculine and feminine nouns. Not infrequently, however, the thematic ending *-a* is found in the manuscripts, often probably as a transmission error. The nom.-voc. plural typically requires the strong stem. In stems without ablaut nom. pl. = acc. pl.

The *i*-, *aē*-, and *u*-stems have full grade of the stem formant: *-aiiō*, *-auuō*, while the *ao*-stems have lengthened grade of the stem formant: *-āuuō*. The nominative plural of *gao-* is *gauuō* in its only occurrence (*Aogəmadaēca* 83), with \**āu* > Av. *auu*. The *u*-stem *pasu-* takes the zero grade of the stem formant throughout its declension (nom. pl. = acc. *pasuuō*).

#### *Nominative-accusative neuter plural*

The nom.-acc. plural of neuter *a*-stems is *-ā*.<sup>31</sup> The *i*- and *u*-stems probably lengthened the stem vowel, but in Avestan and Old Persian the plural = singular. The *n*-, *r/n*-, and *h*-stems form the nom.-acc. plural by lengthening the final syllable of the stem.

Other neuter consonant stems appear to take the ending *-i* in the nom.-acc. plural, e.g., *ast-* ‘bone’, YAv. pl. *asti*.

In Old Avestan, one or the other method was apparently used: *anafšmām* (for \**mām*) ‘without rhythm(?)’, but *nāməni* < *nāman-* ‘name’.

30. The apparent exception is *bruuat.biiām* (V. 8.41, etc.) of uncertain form and genitive(!) function, ‘eyebrow’ being simply \**brū-*. The similarity with OInd. *-bhyām* is therefore coincidental.

31. In Young Avestan, neuter *a*-stems frequently become feminine *ā*-stems in the plural.

*Accusative plural*

In the plural, vowel stems have endings descended from proto-Avestan \*-ŋh/-nš, except in the feminine *ā*- and *i*-stems (*devi*-decl.), where the *-n* was lost already in Indo-European, so that their acc. = nom. pl.

Masculine *a*-stems had the ending \*-aŋh, which developed regularly to \*-əŋ(h), OAv. -əŋg, YAv. \*-ə > -ē or -a, in sandhi OAv. -as° (once *yəŋgstū*), YAv. -ās° or -as°. After *uu* the -ē was assimilated to -ū, and the preceding *uu* could be lost (*daēuuū/daēū* < *daēuuu-* 'demon', *grauuūsca/graūsca* < *grauua-* 'handle'). The Old Persian ending is -ā, the reading and etymological interpretation of which is uncertain.<sup>32</sup>

In *i*- (*aē*-) and *u*- (*ao*-) stems, the combinations \*-inš and \*-unš became nasalized \*-iš and \*-uš, which developed into OAv. -iš and -ūš, YAv. -iš and -ūš. The monosyllabic *ao*-stem *gao*- has acc. pl. *gā* (< \*gāh; cf. acc. sg. *gam*).

In *r*-stems the original ending \*-rnš must first have become \*-ərš, with a nasalized vocalic *r*, which was then realized (written) either as -əṛš or -ərš, with the usual substitution of *a* or *ā* for \*ə. The ending -ərš in time came to be felt as incorrect, and the diphthong *əu* was introduced to produce the form -ərəuš frequently found in the manuscripts (*strəuš* < *star-*, *nəərəuš* < *nar-*, with the familiar ending -əuš of the *u*-stems).

In consonant stems, the Indo-European ending \*-ŋs had become \*-as in proto-Indo-Iranian, which developed and behaved like the nom. sg. of *a*-stems.

*Instrumental plural*

The instrumental plural has two allomorphs in Avestan: -āiš (*a*-stem) and -biš (all other stems). Old Persian has -aibiš also in the *a*-stems. The only Young Avestan example is *āfriuuanaēibiš* < *āfriuuana-* 'friendly-making(?)' in a poorly transmitted text (Fragment Westergaard, in Westergaard 1852–54: 331–34). The use of -biš in the *a*-stems is presumably analogical with the demonstrative pronoun \*aibiš: YAv. *aēibiš*.

Young Avestan has -biš after a consonant (*cuuaṭ.biš* < *cuuaṭ-* 'how much') and analogically in vowel stems (*gaēθābiš*, *āzizanaṭtibiš* < *āzizanaṭti-* '(woman) about to give birth'). The expected form of the *ah*-stems, \*-azbiš, has been replaced by -ēbiš, as if \*-ah.biš. After vowels, Young Avestan must have had \*-βiš > \*-uiš (\*-aoiš), but no such forms are attested directly; instead, the phonetic modifications, together with various analogies, eventually produced the moderately productive ending -iš, which was replaced by OAv. -biš in some declensions, but commonly also by the dat.-abl. ending (!). Old Persian has *ābiš* < \*āb-biš < \*āp-biš < *āp-* 'water'.

The expected phonetic developments are nowhere preserved intact, but probably in disguise in the following cases: the ins. pl. forms *vaŋhuš*, *vaŋuhiš* < *vaŋhu-* 'good' and *auuaŋhiš* < *auuaŋhu-* 'un-good' (mss. *au-*

32. According to Oswald Szemerényi (*Scripta Minora* 4 [Innsbruck: Innsbrucker Beiträge zur Sprachwissenschaft, 1991] 1956–60), the ending may have had a final, unwritten *-n*, which became *-m* before a labial in *abiy sakām pasāva* (DB 5.21–22); since *sakām* is the last word of a sentence and *pasāva* begins not only a new sentence but a new section of the inscription, this hypothesis remains weak, however.

*uarhiš*, *auuarhūš*) are presumably all for *\*-rhuuiš* < *\*-rhuβiš*; *yātuš*, if genuine, must be for *\*yātuuiš* < *\*yātuβiš* < *yātu-* 'sorcere'; *ažiš* < *aži-* 'dragon' coordinated with ins. forms in *-āiš* (Yt. 5.90) may be for *\*ažiuiš*.

In the ins. plural of *n*-stems we have the ending *-iš*: *nāmēniš*, *ašaoniš*, and *sūniš*. The simplest explanation of these forms, in my opinion, is that the forms *\*nāməuiš* and *\*ašaəuiš*, compared with the other oblique plural forms, instead of being remade into *\*nāməbiš* and *\*ašaəbiš*, were simply felt to miss an *n*, which was substituted for the 'irregular' *uu*. In *ašaoniš* the regular weak stem was then also reintroduced. The original ins. plural of *span-/sun-* 'dog' must have been (*\*kūṇ-bhis* > *\*spabiš* >) *\*spaβiš* > *\*spauuiš* > *\*spaoiš*/*\*spəuiš*, which, for obvious reasons, was remade as *sūniš* after the pattern of *ašaoniš*: weak stem + *-iš*. This procedure produced forms that looked like they were made from the weak stem with the ending *-iš*, which may then have analogically supported the irregular *u-* and *i-*stem forms above.

#### Dative-ablative plural

The ending of the dat.-abl. plural is Av. *-biiō* (*-biias°*), before which the *a*-stems have the diphthong *aē* (OAv. *aē* or *ōi*).<sup>33</sup> After vowels, in Young Avestan, this ending became *-βiiō* and *-uuiiō*/*-uu<sup>a</sup>iō* (*xštəuuiβiiō* *xštəuui-*, ethnic(?), *vōiγnāuuiō* < *vōiγnā-*, a kind of natural disaster, *gaēθāuu<sup>a</sup>iō*, *rasmaoiō* < *rasman-* 'battle line', *ašāuuaiō*, *nəruuiō*/*nuruuiō* < *nar-*), but these forms are found only rarely, having been replaced by the postconsonantal (and OAv.) forms in *-biiō*.

The *p*-stem *āp-* has dat.-abl. pl. *a'βiiō* (< *\*aβiāh* < *\*ab-βiāh* < *\*ap-βiāh*).

The form *maniiəoiβiias°* (< *maniiəuua-*) must be a replacement for *\*manija(u)ōiāh* (or sim.) < *\*manijaəu<sup>a</sup>iāh*.

As in the ins., the expected form of the *ah*-stems, *\*-azβiiah*, has been replaced by *-əβiō*, except *azəhβiuiō* < *azəh-* 'constriction, tight place'.

#### Genitive plural

The genitive plural ends in *-əm*, before which an *-n-* is inserted in most of the vowel (incl. *ū*-stems) stems. Hysterokinetic *i-* (*aē-*), *u-*, and monosyllabic *ao*-stems have the endings *\*-iəm* and *-uəm* (YAv. *kəoiyəm* < *kəuui-* 'poet-priest', *hašyəm* < *\*haščiəm* < *haxaē-* 'companion', *raiiyəm* < *raē-* 'wealth', *gauuəm*, *pasuuəm*, *raθβəm*).

In the genitive plural, the Avestan manuscripts have short vowels in the *a*-stems (*-anəm*), except in *mašiiānəm* (possibly influenced by *mašiiāka-* 'people', itself being for expected *\*mašiiāka-*) and more often short than long vowels in the *i-* and *u-*stems (*-iənəm*, *-ūnəm*). Old Persian has *-ānām* and *-ūnām* (written <-u-n-a-m> or <-u-v-n-a-m>).

#### Locative plural

The locative plural endings are *-hū/-šū/-sū* or with *-a* (YAv. and OP): YAv. *-huua*, *-šuuu* or *-š.huua* (see §0.5), OP *-<sup>h</sup>uvā*, *-šuvā*.

33. The dat.-abl. pl. *haēnəβiuiō* < *haēnā-* in Yt. 10.93 is probably in anticipation of the following *draoməβiuiō*.

The final *-a* forms a separate syllable (*-u'a*); therefore, *-huua* remains and does not become *\*-ŋ'ha*.

### 3.4. Comparative and superlative

The comparative and superlative of adjectives (including participles) and adverbs can be made in one of two ways: either with the suffixes *-tara-* and *-təma-* or with *-iih-* and *-išta-*.

The suppletive type: Eng. *good* ~ *better*, is attested in OP *vazarka-* 'great', *maθišta-* 'greatest' (cf. MPers. *wazurg*, *mahī/meh*, *mahist*) and perhaps OP *naiba-*, *\*vahayah-* (proper name *vahayaz-dāta-*), *\*vahišta-* (cf. MPers. *nēw/nēk*, *wahī/weh*, *wahīšt*). It seems not to be represented in Avestan.

The comparative in *-tara-* and superlative in *-təma-* are formed from the stem of adjectives (weak stem if ablauting) and with appropriate sandhi before the ending. The *a*-stems often use the "composition form" in *-ō* before these endings. This is the "regular" and productive type, which can be made from all kinds of adjectival words, even another superlative: *draē-jīštō.təmaēšuuaca ni<sup>u</sup>ruzdō.təmaēšuuaca* 'among the poorest, among the most emaciated' (V. 3.19) < *draējišta-* < *driyu-* 'poor'. A subgroup of this type contains prefixes with comparatives and superlatives in *-ara-*, *-ama-* (beside *-tara-*, *-tama-*):

Simple and derived adjectives and adverbs: OAv. *fraša-* 'perfect', *frašō.təma-*; *po<sup>u</sup>ru-* 'plentiful', *po<sup>u</sup>rutəma-*; YAv. *baēšaziia-* 'healing', *baēšaziio.tara-*, *baēšaziio.təma-*; *amauuant-* 'powerful', *amauuastara-*, *amauuastəma-* (*-uuast-* < *\*-u<sup>u</sup>nt-*); *ašauuan-* 'orderly', *ašauuastəma-* (*-uuast-* for *\*-uuu-t-* < *\*-u<sup>u</sup>nt-* in analogy with *uuant-* stems).

Prefixes and adverbs: *apa-* Av. *apara-* 'future', *apəma-* 'last'; *upa-* 'up above', *upara-*, *upəma-*; *aδara-* 'below', *a<sup>u</sup>ntəma-*, *maδəma-* 'middle'; with *-tara-*, *-tama-*: OP *apa-*, *apatara-* 'beyond(?)'; *fra-*, YAv., OP *fratarā-* 'better' (OP also *fraθara-*), Av. *fratəma-*, OP *fratama-* 'foremost'; YAv. *nitəma-* and *ustəma-* 'last'.

Present participles: YAv. *ha<sup>u</sup>nt-* 'being', *hastəma-* 'best'; *ta<sup>u</sup>ruuiai<sup>u</sup>ant-* 'overcoming, victorious', *ta<sup>u</sup>ruuiai<sup>u</sup>astəma-*.

Compounds: *huδāh-* 'giving good gifts', *huδāstəma-*; *hubao<sup>i</sup>di-* 'smelling good', *hubao<sup>i</sup>ditara-*, *hubao<sup>i</sup>ditəma-*; *yāskə<sup>r</sup>t-* 'competitive(?)', *yāskə<sup>r</sup>stara-*, *yāskə<sup>r</sup>stəma-*; *və<sup>r</sup>θrajan-* 'obstruction-smashing', *və<sup>r</sup>θra<sup>u</sup>stara-*, *və<sup>r</sup>θra<sup>u</sup>stəma-* (with *-ast-* in analogy with present participles).

The comparative in Av. *-iih-* (OP *-īyah-* and superlative in Av., OP *-išta-*) are made from the root in the full grade, also with appropriate sandhi before the ending. Adjectives with suffixes lose these.

Simple adjectives (only with stem vowel): no suffix: Av. *maz-* (and *mazānt-*) 'great', *maziiah-*, *mazišta-*; *a*-stems: Av. *aka-* 'evil', *ašiih-* (< *\*ačiih-*), *acišta-*; adv.: *bāda* 'occasionally(?)', *bā<sup>i</sup>dištəm*; *u*-stems: Av. *āsu-* 'fast', *āsiiah-*, *āsišta-*; *driyu-* 'poor', *draējišta-*; *ə<sup>r</sup>zu-* 'upright, straight', *razišta-*; *kasu-* 'small', *kasiiah-*; *var<sup>h</sup>u-* 'good', *vahiiah-* (OAv. also *vaxiih-*, YAv. also *vaj<sup>h</sup>ah-*), *vahišta-*.

Adjectives with suffixes: suffix *-ta-*: Av. *masita-* 'long', *masiiah-*, *masišta-*; *spənta-* 'life-giving', *spaniiah-*, *spəništa-*; suffix *-ra-*: Av. *uyra-* 'strong',

*aojiih-*, *aojišta-*; *namra-* ‘pliable’, *ṇamišta-*; *xrūždra-* ‘hard’, *xraoždīšta-*; suffix *-ri-*: Av. *bu’ri-* ‘plentiful’, *baoiiah-*, *dbōišta-* (with *-ōi-* < *-əuui-*); suffix *-m/ṃant-*: *xratumaṇt-* ‘wise’, *xraθβišta-* (or superl. of *°xratu-* in compounds); OP *tunuvaṃt-* ‘mighty’, *tauviyah-*.

Compounds: OAv. *zarazdā-* ‘confident’, *zarazdišta-*.

Roots with internal laryngeal: *darṓya-* ‘long’ (< *\*d̥r̥Hga-*) *drājiih-*, *drājišta-* (< *\*draHj-*); with suffix *-ra-*: Av. *ādra-* ‘lowly’ (< *\*ṛHd-ra-*), *nā’diih-* (< *\*naHd-i̯āh-*); *srīra-* ‘beautiful’ (< *\*c̥riH-ra-*), *sraiih-* (< *\*c̥raiH-i̯āh-*), *sra-ēšta-* (< *\*sraiH-išta-*); *stūra-* ‘sturdy, thick’ (< *\*stHura-*), *staoiih-* (< *\*staHy-i̯āh-*), *stāuuišta-* (< *\*staHy-išta-*); *sūra-* ‘rich in life-giving strength’ (< *\*cuH-ra-*), *səuuišta-* (< *\*cauH-išta-*); *u-*stems: *po<sup>u</sup>ru-* ‘plentiful’ (< *\*p̥r̥H-u-*), *frāiih-* (< *\*praH-i̯āh-*), *fraēšta-* (< *\*praH-išta-*).

Roots with internal *n*: *taxma-* ‘firm’ (< *\*t̥ṅk-ma-*), *tašiih-* (< *\*tanč-i̯āh-*), *tañcišta-*.

There are a few superlatives in *-išta-* of verbal derivatives, which structurally correspond to either present participles or forms of the type *-kara-* used in compounds: OAv. *ma’rišta-*, cf. *marəṇt-* ‘remembering, memorizing’; *ba’rišta-*, cf. *barəṇt-* ‘carrying’ and *°bara-*.

A few adjectives have both kinds of superlative, but with semantic differentiation, e.g., *po<sup>u</sup>ru-* ‘much, many’, OAv. superl. *po<sup>u</sup>rutəma-* (OInd. *purutama-*) ‘in highest numbers’, YAv. *fraēšta-* ‘most’; *spənta-* ‘life-giving’, OAv. *spəništa-* ‘most life-giving’, *spəntō.təma-* ‘having the name *spənta-* in the highest degree(?)’; *aka-*, OAv. *ašiih-* ‘the (more) evil of the two’, YAv. *akatarā-* ‘worse (for)’.

### 3.5. Adverbs

Adverbs can be invariable particles, case forms of nouns or adjectives, including compounds, or forms derived from nouns or pronouns.

Invariable particles: Av. *aipī* ‘hereafter’; OP *azdā* ‘well-known(?)’, OAv. *dāibitā* ‘from old, always(?)’; Av. *mošū* ‘soon, quickly’; Av. *pa’ti* ‘in return’, OP *°patiy* ‘in addition’; OAv. *arəm* ‘in due measure(?)’; OAv. *nū*, Av. *nūrəm*, OP *nūram* ‘now’; OAv. *adē* ‘below’, *auuarē* ‘hither!’, *nanā* ‘one way or another’; Av. *u’tī* ‘thus, quote’.

Adverbs with the ending *\*-s* (Schindler 1987): *ašō* ‘greatly’ (< *\*ṛj-š-*; cf. *maz-* ‘great’), OAv. *əṛš* ‘truly’, YAv. *arš* (< *\*Hrj-š-*; cf. *əṛzu-* ‘straight’); cf. OAv. *āuuiš* ‘openly’.

Adverbs of place and manner with modal and spatial suffixes: *-θra* ‘where(to)’, *-θa* ‘how’, *-da* ‘where, when’, YAv. *-dāt*, OP *-daš* ‘from where/when’,<sup>34</sup> ‘from where’, etc. (see on correlative pronominal adverbs, below). Note also OP *a<sup>h</sup>ma-ta<sup>h</sup>* ‘from there’.

Case forms:

Nom.-acc. neut. sg.: YAv. *daršaṭ*, OP *daršam* ‘strongly’; YAv. *darṓyəm*, OP *dargam* ‘long, for a long time’, YAv. *po<sup>u</sup>rum* ‘in front’, OP *paruvam* ‘before’;

34. The ending *-daš* is to be explained by a proportion (Hoffmann 1992: 744–45): *bābirauv* ‘in Babylon’ : *hacā bābirauš* ‘from Babylon’ = *avadā* ‘there’ : X ⇒ X = *hacā avadaš* ‘from there’.

YAv. *pao'rim*, *bitim*, OP *duvitiyām*, YAv. *θritim*, OP *çitiyām* 'first(ly), secondly, thirdly (for the first/second/third time)'; YAv. *ha'θim* 'truly', OAv. *vasē*, OYAv. *vasō* 'at will'; OP *apataram* 'farther away', *kamnam* 'in small numbers', *vasiy* 'greatly'.

Abl. sing: Av. *dūrāt*, OP *dūradaš* 'from far away'.

Loc. sg.: Av. *dūrē*, OP *dūrai* (*api*) 'in the distance, far away'; YAv. *a'irime* 'in peace'; OP *ašnaiy* 'close' (see also §3.8.2).

Compounds: YAv. *frā.āpəm* 'with the stream', '*pa'tiiāpəm* 'against the stream', *yaθā.kəṛtəm* 'as it is done', OP *pai-padam* 'in place', *duvitā-parnam* 'in two branches', *ni-padiy* 'in the footsteps of, close behind', *pasāva* (< *pasā-ava*) 'after that, afterward', *para-draya<sup>h</sup>* 'beyond the ocean'.

### 3.6. Pronouns

The Avestan pronouns are of the Indo-Iranian type: personal, demonstrative, reflexive-reciprocal, relative, interrogative, and indefinite (indefinite relative).

The personal pronouns distinguish three persons; the third person distinguishes three genders. Many have enclitic forms, including the 2nd sg./pl. nom.

The demonstrative pronouns have three-way deixis of varying emphasis. They all have two (or more) stems, one reserved for the nom. masculine and feminine, the other for the other cases, or a more complex distribution.

There are two near-deixis (1st pers.) pronouns: *aii-/ima-* 'this' is used of things near the speaker and things in this world, as opposed to in heaven, but also something impending, hence 'the following'; *aēša-/aēta-* 'this' partly overlaps with *aii-/ima-*, but most frequently refers to *the matter at hand*, both what has been said and what is going to be said; in the legal books of the *Avesta*, it is therefore used in the sense of 'this X in question', 'the aforementioned'.

The Old Avestan pronoun (nom.) *huuō* 'he, that one' may originally have had 2nd-person deixis: 'he, that one (near you)' (Watkins 2000). In the Old Avesta it appears to refer to somebody in the vicinity of the speaker and the one spoken of/to (the one currently "on stage"). The oblique stem *ana-* can, apparently, be used with "derogatory" deixis (cf. Latin *iste*, Spanish *ese*).

The original 'that'-deixis pronouns are *ha-/ta-*, with weak deixis (also used as 3rd pers. personal pron.) and *hāu/auua-* with strong 'yonder'-deixis, notably used about things in heaven.

The relative pronoun has the Ilr. stem *ya-*, which in Old Persian was univerted with the 3rd pers. personal pronoun to form the system *haya-/taya-*. The nom.-acc. neut. is OAv. *hiiaṭ* (of unclear origin), YAv. *yaṭ* (*hiiaṭ* in a few "archaizing" formulas).

The interrogative and indefinite pronouns are formed from the Ilr. stems *ka-* and *ci-*.

#### *Special pronominal forms*

Pronouns are basically inflected according to the *a-* and *ā-* declensions, but with some special "pronominal" case endings inherited from Indo-

European, notably neut. nom.-acc. sg. *-at* (YAv. *-at*, OP *-a'*); masc. nom. plur. *\*-ai* (YAv. *-ie*, OP *-aiy*); dat. sg. of the personal pronouns 1st and 2nd pers. in *\*-bia(h)*; the element *\*-hm-* (Av. *-hm-*, OP *-<sup>h</sup>m-*) in several oblique cases masc.-neut.; and *\*-hī-* (Av. *-īh-*, OP *-hāy-*) in several oblique cases feminine; the elements masc. *\*-aiš-*, fem. *-āh-* in the gen. plural.

There are some Old Avestan feminine singular forms in *-aē*, e.g., *x<sup>v</sup>aē<sup>o</sup>* (cf. Latin *quae*).

Some pronominal forms are also found in “pronominal” adjectives, including the Old Avestan possessive pronouns *ma-* ‘my’, *θβa-* ‘thy’, Av. *aniia-*, OP *aniya-* ‘other’, Av., OP *hama-* ‘one and the same’, OP *haruva-* ‘whole’, Av. *vispa-*, OP *visa-* ‘every, all’: neut. nom.-acc. sg. YAv. *aniiaṭ* (but *vispəm*), OP *aniyaṭ*, *aniyaš-čiy*,<sup>35</sup> masc. dat. sg. YAv. *aniiahmāi*, *vispəməi* (< *\*vispəməi*?); fem. gen., dat., loc. sg.: OP gen.-dat. *hamahayāyā*, loc. *haruvahayāyā*; nom. pl. YAv. *aniie*, *vispe*, OP *aniyaiy*, *visaiy*; gen. pl. YAv. *aniiaē-šam*, *vispəēšam*.

#### Reflexive and reciprocal pronouns

For ‘own’ Avestan has *x<sup>v</sup>a-/hauua-* and Young Avestan also *x<sup>v</sup>aēpa'θiia-*.

For ‘self’, the closest Young Avestan equivalent is *tanū-* ‘body’, with or without *hauuā-* or *x<sup>v</sup>aēpa'θiia-*, as in *azəm tanūm aḡuze* ‘I hid my own body’ (Yt. 17.55) and *haom* (for *hauuəm*) *tanūm guzaēta* ‘he should hide his own body’ (Yt. 4.4), *haca hauuāiīās<sup>o</sup> tanuuō* ‘away from one’s own body’ (V. 10.5), *x<sup>v</sup>aēpaiθiiaš<sup>o</sup> tanuuō* ‘of (their) own body’ (Yt. 10.23).<sup>36</sup>

Old Persian has *<sup>h</sup>uvaipašiya-* ‘self’ and *<sup>h</sup>uvāipašiya-* ‘own’.

#### Interrogative and indefinite pronouns

The interrogative pronouns *ka-* and *ci-* ‘who’, *ciṭ* ‘what’, *katāra-* ‘which (of two)’ can be made indefinite by means of the particle *-ciṭ*, repetition, or a combination of the two, e.g., YAv. *katarasciṭ* ‘each (of the two)’, *kəmcīṭ* ‘each’, *kahmāciṭ* ‘to whomsoever’, *kahe kahiiāciṭ* ‘of each and every one’, *kahmi kahmicīṭ* ‘in each and every’, *kaṛḡhe kaṛḡhe* ‘in each and every’; OP *kašciy* ‘anybody’, *cišciy* ‘anything’.

Indefinite relative pronouns and indefinite adverbs are formed in the same way: *yaṭciṭ* ‘whatever, whenever’, *kuuaciṭ* ‘wherever’.

The indefinite particles *-ca* and *-cana* are less common, e.g., OAv. *cišcā*, *caiiascā*, *cicā*; YAv. *cišca* ‘whoever, everyone’, *kaθacina* ‘however’.

The negative indefinite pronouns are identical with the interrogative pronouns prefixed with the negation in Avestan, e.g., *naēciš* ‘nobody’, *mā-ciš* ‘(let) nobody’; Old Persian has *naiy* . . . *kašciy/cišciy* ‘nobody, nothing’.

#### Correlative pronominal adverbs

The pronominal stems give rise to numerous derived “rhyming” forms, adjectival and adverbial. These are often found in pairs e.g.:

*i-* ‘here and now’: OAv. *idā*, YAv. *iḡa*, OP *idā* ‘here’; Av. *iθā* ‘in this manner’; YAv. *iθrā* ‘here’

35. Also by a proportion for *\*anjat-cit*: masc. sg. *aniya* : *aniyaš-ciy* = neut. sg. *anya* : X ⇒ X = *aniyaš-ciy*. Similarly also *cišciy* ‘anything’ (below) for *\*cit-cit*.

36. Cf. Modern Persian *x<sup>v</sup>iš* and *x<sup>v</sup>ištan*.

*āeta-* ‘this’: YAv. *aētaδa* ‘here’; *aētauuaṇt-* ‘this much’

*a-* ‘then and there’: OAv. *adā*, YAv. *aδa*, OP *ada*<sup>o</sup>, *adakaiy* ‘then’; YAv. *aδāṭ* ‘from there’; Av. *aθā* ‘in that manner’; Av. *aθrā* ‘there’; YAv. *auuaṇt-*, OP *avā* ‘that much’

*auua-* ‘yonder’: YAv. *auuaδa*, OP *avadā* ‘there’; OP *avadaš* ‘from there’; YAv. *auuaθa*, OP *avaθā* ‘in that manner’; YAv. *auuaθra* ‘there’; YAv. *auua-uuṇt-* ‘that much’; OP *avākaram* ‘of that kind’

*ātara-* ‘that one (of two)’: YAv. *yatāra-* ‘which (of two)’, *katāra-* ‘which (of two)?’, *ātaraθra* ‘on that side (of two)’

*ya-*, rel.: OAv. *yadā*, YAv. *yaδa*, OP *yadā* ‘when’; YAv. *yaδāṭ* ‘whence’; Av. *yaθā* ‘in what manner’; Av. *yaθrā* ‘where’; Av. *yauuaṇt-* ‘as much (. . . as)’

*ka-*, *ku-*, *c-* interr.: OAv. *kadā*, YAv. *kaδa* ‘when?’; Av. *kaθā* ‘in what manner?’; OAv. *kudā*, YAv. *kudat* ‘from where?’; Av. *kuθrā* ‘where?’; YAv. *cuuaṇt-* ‘how much?’; OP *ciyākaram* ‘of what kind?’

*aniia-* ‘other’: OAv. *aniiada*<sup>o</sup> ‘elsewhere’, OAv. *aniiāθā* ‘differently’

### 3.7. Number words

Quite a few cardinals, ordinals, and other number words are attested in Young Avestan, while Old Avestan has hardly any. In Old Persian, few number words are spelled out, though several Old Persian numerals are found in Elamite texts.

The cardinals ‘two’ and ‘three’ have archaic feminine forms with the formant *hr/šr*.

*The numerals ‘one’ to ‘four’*

‘One’

‘One’ is Av. *aēuua-*, OP *aiva-*. Among the forms of *aēuua-*, note YAv. acc. sg. masc. *aōim*, *ōim*, *ōiium*, etc.

The stem *\*ha-* (< *\*sm-*) is found in YAv. *hakərəṭ*, OP *hakaram* ‘once’.

The ordinals are Av. *fratəma-*.

‘Two’ and ‘both’

‘Two’ is expressed by the stems *\*dya-* and *\*d̥yi-* (YAv. *bi*<sup>o</sup> in compounds): cardinal YAv. *duua*; ordinal OAv. *d<sup>ai</sup>bitiia-*, YAv. *bitiia-* (cf. *ātbitim/āδbitim* ‘a second time’), OP *duvitiya-* (*duvitīyam* ‘for the second time’); YAv. *biš* ‘twice’.

The words for ‘both’ are OAv. *ubā*, YAv. *uua*, OP *ubā* (gen.-dat. *ubānām*); YAv. *uuaēm* ‘both’ (OInd. *ubhayam*).

YAv. *duua* and *uua* (i.e., *dúua*, *úua*) have nom.-acc. masc. YAv. *duua*, *uua*, fem., neut. OAv. *ubē*, YAv. *duiie*, *duuaē*<sup>o</sup>, *uiie*; dat.-abl.-inst. *duuaēbiia*, and gen. *duuuiiā*, *uuuiiā*.

‘Three’

The stem is *θri-* (YAv. *θri*<sup>o</sup> in compounds), whence the cardinal nom. masc. *θrāiio* (acc. *θrīš*, gen. *θraiiam*, dat.-abl. *θribiio*), fem. *tišrō* (gen. *tišram*, *tišranam*), neut. *θri*; the ordinal is Av. *θritiia-*, OP *çitīyam* ‘for the third time’; YAv. *θriš* ‘thrice’.



## 'Four'

The stem is *čaθβar-/catur-* (YAv. *caθru°* in compounds), whence the cardinal nom. masc. *caθβārō* (acc. *caturē*, gen. *caturam*), fem. *catarō*, neut. *catura*; the ordinal is YAv. *tūriia-* (*āxtūrim* 'a fourth time'); YAv. *caθruš* 'four times'.

*The remaining cardinals*

The numerals 'five' to 'ten': *pañca*, *xšuuas̄*, *hapta*, *ašta*, *nauua*, *dasa*, have thematic gen. forms (*pañcanam*, *nauuanam*, *dasanam*).

Most of the numerals 'eleven' to 'nineteen' are known only from the ordinals, which were identical with the cardinals: *aēuuandasa-*, *duuadasa-*, *θridasa-*, *caθrudasa-*, *pañcadasa-*, *xšuuas̄.dasa-*, *hapta.dasa-*, *ašta.dasa-*, *nauua.dasa-*.

'Twenty' is *visati*.

'Thirty' to 'fifty' are compounded with *°satəm*: *θrisatəm*, *caθβar°satəm*, *pañcāsātəm*.

'Sixty' to 'ninety' are feminine *ti*-stems: *xšuuas̄ti-*, *haptāti-*, *aštāti-*, *nauuāti-*.

'Hundred' and 'thousand' are neuter *a*-stems, *sata-*, *hazaγra-*: sg. *satəm*, *hazaγrəm*, dual *duiie sa'te*, *duiie hazaγre*, with mixed plural forms: *tišrō sata*, *caθβārō sata*, *nauua hazaγra*, etc.

Compounded numerals are represented by *pañcāca visati* '25', *θraiiasca θrisasca* '33', *pañcāca haptāti-* '75', *nauuaca nauuāti* '99'.

Higher numerals: *duiie nauuāti* '180', *nauuaca . . . nauuātišca nauuaca sata nauuaca hazaγra nauuas̄asca baēuuān* '999,999' (the highest Avestan number).

*Derived numerals*

The ordinals of 'four', 'five', and 'six' are characterized by the root vowel *u*: *tūriia-*, *puxda-*, *xštuua-*. 'Seventh' has the formant *-θa-*: *haptaθa-*; 'fifth' and 'eighth' to 'tenth' have *-ma-*: *pañcama-*, *aštəma-*, *naoma-*, *dasəma-*; 'eleventh' to 'nineteenth' have the formant *-a-*, making them identical with the ordinals (see above). 'Twenty' and 'thirty' have the superlative suffix *-təma-*: *visastəma-*, *θrisastəma-*.

Multiplicatives ('times', '-fold') have various formations ('once' to 'four times', see above): the forms *biš* and *θriš* may receive an additional formant *-uat*: *bižuuaŋ*, *θrižuuaŋ*; 'six/nine times' have a formant *-aiia*: *xšuuazaiia*, *naomaiia*; the tens have a formant *-uā* (*-uəm*) '-fold': *visatiuūā*, *θrisaθβā*, *θrisataθβəm*, *caθβar°saθβā*, *pañcasaθβā*, *xšuuas̄tiuuā*, *hapta'iθiuūā*, *ašta'iθiuūā*, *nauuātiuuā*. The form *nauuas̄s̄s̄°* (cf. OInd. *°śaḥ*) is used in *nauuas̄asca baēuuān* '90,000'. Higher numbers: *satāiiuš*, *hazaγrāiš*, *baēuuarōiš*.

The '-th time' is formed with the prefix *ā-*: *āṭbitīm/āḍbitīm*, *āθritīm*, *āxtūriīm*.

Fractions are made with the formant *-hya-/šya-*: *θrišuua-*, *caθrušuua-*, *paγtaγ<sup>h</sup>ha-*, *haptahuua-*, *aštahuua-*. The same formation was used in Old Persian, as attested in Elamite texts: *ši-iš-maš* = \**čišuva-*, *ša-iš-šu-iš-ma* = \**čačušuva-*, *aš-du-maš* = \**aštauva-*, etc. (Hoffmann 1965).

### 3.8. Derived nominals

Words can be derived in a variety of manners: by prefixes and suffixes and by composition, of which the following is a sample.

#### 3.8.1. Suffixes

Several suffixes have been discussed above, e.g., *-ti-* for action nouns (see infinitives, §2.3.11), the suffixes making participles of necessity, the suffixes used to derive number words, the suffixes making stem forms in general, and others. Among the more common, even productive, Old Iranian suffixes are the following:

*-a-*

Among the many uses of this suffix (the thematic vowel), one is to make adjectives from nouns (including derived nouns and compounds), often accompanied by lengthened (or full) grade of the first syllable of the noun; when the first syllable has a long vowel, the adjective will be identical with the noun from which it is derived:

Av. *maniiuuua-* 'belonging to the world of thought' < *maniiu-*; *narauua-* 'son/descendant of Naru'; *haozaθβa-* 'the fact of being from a good lineage' < *huzantu-* 'of good lineage'; *āpa-* 'waterlogged' < *āp-* 'water', *anāpa-* 'waterless'; *upa'ri-z(ə)ma-* 'living upon the earth' < *zam-* 'earth'; *hazaγrō.zima-* < *ziiam-* 'winter' 'space of a thousand years';

OP *<sup>h</sup>uvāipašiya-* 'own' < *<sup>h</sup>uvaipašiya-* 'self'; *mārgava-* 'person from Margiana' < *margu-* 'Margiana'; *pārsa* 'Persian' < *pārsa* 'Persia'.

*-na-*, *-ana-*

This suffix produces various kinds of nouns and adjectives from roots:

Av. *yasna-* 'sacrifice' < *vyaz* 'sacrifice'; *frašna-* 'question' < *vfras* 'ask'; *x'afna-* 'sleep' < *√x'ap* 'sleep'; *°dana-*, OP *°dāna-* 'depository, container' < *vdā* 'place'; *°stāna-*, OP *stāna-* 'place (for . . .)' < *√stā* 'stand';—YAv. *hanjama-* 'assembly, gathering' < *ham* + *√gam/jam* 'come together'; *varhana-* 'dress' < *√vah* 'wear', *maēθana-* 'dwelling' < *√maēθ* 'dwell'; *raocana-* 'window' < *√raok/raoc* 'shine'; *pacina-* 'cooked meal' < *√pak/pac* 'cook';

OP *hamarana-* 'battle' < *ham* + *√ar* 'clash'; *draujana-* 'liar, deceiver' < *√draug/drauj* 'lie, deceive'; *pariyana-* < *\*pariyayana(?)* < *pari* + *√ai* 'go about'; *āvahana-* 'settlement, town' < *ā* + *√vah* 'inhabit'; *parana-* in *paranam* 'before, formerly' < *para<sup>h</sup>* 'before(?)'.

*-i-*, *-iā-*

The suffix *-i-* and its thematicized form *-iā-* are also used to form adjectives denoting various kinds of appurtenance, notably geographical; they are often accompanied by lengthened grade in the first syllable:

YAv. *āhūrri-* 'pertaining to / belonging to Ahura (Mazdā)' < *ahura-* (*mazdā-*); *hāuuani-* '(time of day) pertaining to the haoma pressing' < *hauuana-* 'haoma pressing, mortar'; *vār<sup>ə</sup>θrayni-* 'victorious' < *vār<sup>ə</sup>θrayna-* 'victory, god of victory'; *māzdaiiasni-* 'belonging to the Mazdaiiasnians' < *mazdaiiasna-*; *aβimiθri-* 'somebody acting against a contract'; *haomiia-*

'related to the haoma'; *nmāniia-* 'pertaining to the home' < *nmāna-*; *visiia-* 'pertaining to the town' < *vis-*; *xšaθriia-* 'in command' < *xšaθra-* 'royal command'; *raθβiia-* 'according to the ratu'; *tūrriia-* 'Turian(?)'; *hupaθmaniia-* 'the fact of having good flights'; *vispō.bāmiia-* 'being all light';

OP *yāuhmani-* 'being in control(?)' < *\*yāuhman-* 'harnessing(?)' < *vyauk* 'harness'; *bāgayādi-*, month name: '(month) devoted to sacrifices to the god' < *baga-* + *\*yāda-*; *nāviya-* (YAv. *nāuuaiia-*) 'deep' (lit., needing a boat to cross?) < *nāu-* 'boat'; *māniya-* '(servant?) belonging to one's house'; *ham<sup>m</sup>mičiya-* 'conspirator' < *\*ham-miča-* 'having the same' *miθra* 'contract'; *θanuvaniya-* 'connected with/using a bow' < *\*θanuvan-* 'bow'; *xšāyaθiya-* < *\*xšayaθa-* 'the wielding of power' < *vxšai* 'to be in power'; *agriya-* 'foremost' < *\*agra-* 'tip(?)'; *aθuriya-* 'Assyrian' < *aθurā-* 'Assyria'; *haxāmanišiya-* 'Achaemenid' < *haxāmaniša-* 'Achaemenes'; with *k* > *c* before the suffix: *maciya-* < *maka-* 'Makran', *ākaufaciya-* 'mountain-dwellers' < *\*ākaufaka-*.

A special use of the suffix *-i-* is to denote the master of something, somebody in charge of, owner of: OAv. *dāmi-*, the one in charge of, the one holding the *dāman-* the (cosmic) 'nets, fabrics(?)'; YAv. *uštrō.stāni-* 'somebody in charge of, owner of the camel stall (*uštrō.stāna-*)'; *pasuš.hasti-* 'somebody in charge of, owner of the sheep pen (*pasuš.hasta-*)'.

The suffix *-i-* is also used to make patronymics: *zaraθuštri-* 'son of Zarathustra' < *zaraθuštra-*, beside *-āna-*, *-āni-*: YAv. *jāmāspana-* < *jāmāspa-*; *āθβiiāni-* < *\*āθβiia-* (OInd. *āptya-*) (Schmitt 2002).

*-ka-*, *-aka-*, *-kā-*

This is the most productive suffix in both Indic and Iranian, but is still relatively rare in Avestan and Old Persian:

YAv. *ja'nikā-* < *ja'nī-* 'woman'; *mašiiāka-* > *mašiiia-* 'man, mortal'; *pasuka-* 'sheep and goats' < *pasu-*; *nā'rikā-* < *nā'ri-* 'woman'; *jahikā-* 'whore' < *jahi-*; with compounds: Av. *humaiiaka-* proper name < *humaiiā-*, *apər'nāiiuka-* = *apər'nāiiu-* 'not yet adult'; used of demonic beings: *əuuə'zikā-* 'producing nothing (good)' (V. 18.30, etc.); *niuuaiiaka nīpašnaka apa.skarakā apa.xraosaka* '(libations) to be 'woe'd down, to be (ground) under the heels, to be skreeched back(?), to be howled back(?)' (Yt. 5.95);

OP *vazarka-* < *\*vazar* 'greatness' (cf. *vašnā* 'by the greatness'); *ārstika-*, *h<sup>u</sup>ārstika-* '(good) spearman' < *\*aršti-* 'spear'; *marika-* 'young man' < *\*mariya-*; *ba'daka-* 'bondsmen' < *\*banda-* 'bond'; *anāmaka-*, month name < *anāman-* 'nameless'; *kaṇnuvaka-* 'workman, artisan' (< *kaṇnau-*, present stem, 'do, make').

*-tāt-* feminine

This is a productive suffix making abstract nouns from adjectives. It is also used to "quote" or refer to words. There are no examples in Old Persian, where it may have been replaced by *-tā-* (OP *arštā-* ~ Av. *arštāt-*):

Av. *ha<sup>r</sup>ruuatāt-* 'wholeness' < *ha<sup>r</sup>ruua-*; *uparatāt-* 'superiority' < *upara-*; OAv. *kəuuitāt-* 'the word/title of kauui 'poet'; *auuaētāt-* 'the word auuōi 'woe!'; YAv. *yauuaētāt-* 'that which is *yauuaē* 'forever', eternity'; *iriθiiqštāt-* 'the fact of being *iriθiiqšt-* 'dying'.

### 3.8.2. Compounds

Compounds with prefixes:

Exclusively nominal prefixes include:

*a-* (ə-), *an-* ‘not, non-, lacking’, used to negate nouns and adjectives (including those made from verbs) and to make adjectives meaning ‘lacking something’: OAv. *adrujiiant-* ‘non-deceiving’, YAv. *araθβiia-* ‘not according to the (cosmic) models’, *asrušti-* ‘non-hearing’, *anašauuan-* ‘not orderly’, *a- + vista-* ‘found’ > *əuuišta-* ‘unfound, not to be found’, *əuuišti-* ‘fact of not finding’, *əuuišəmna-* ‘not to be found(?)’, *aṅhaošəmna-* ‘not drying out’, *əuuiđuuah-* ‘ignorant’, *afrataṭ.kuši-* ‘not yet flowing forth’, *akarana-* ‘endless, unlimited’, *anayra-* ‘without beginning’.

*hu-* (Av. also *xʷ-*, OP *huv-*) ‘good’ and *duš-*, *duž-* ‘bad, evil’: Av. *hušiti-*, *dušiti-* (< °šiti-) ‘good/bad dwelling’; *xʷiti-*, *dužiti-* (< *duš-iti-*) ‘good (easy)/bad (difficult) going, comfort/discomfort’; *hūti-* < \**hu-uti-* ‘somebody whose weaving is good, artisan’, *hudāh-*, *duždāh-* ‘giving good/bad gifts’ (< °*da’ah-*); *huxšaθra-*, *duš².xšaθra-* ‘having good/bad command’; *humanah-*, *dužmanah-* ‘thinking good/bad thoughts’; *huraoda-* ‘beautiful’ < *raoda-* ‘growth, stature’; *humata-hūxta-huuaršta-* ‘well thought, spoken, done’;—OP *huv-asa-* ‘having good horses’, *huv-asabāra-* ‘good horseman’; *dušiyāra-* (cf. YAv. *dužiiāriia-*) ‘bad season, famine’.

Preverbs used as prefixes typically have slightly different meanings from those of the preverbs; compare:

*apa* ‘in the back, backward’ (preverb: ‘back, backward’): *apakauua-* ‘with hump in the back, humpback’, *apazadah-* ‘with backward buttocks, flat-assed’

*fra* ‘in front’ (preverb: ‘forward, forth’): *frabāzu-* ‘(the length of) the arm held forward’, *frašnu-* ‘with knees jutting out, knob-kneed’, *frakauua-* ‘hump-chested’, *fraiia-* ‘morning’

*vī* ‘to the side(s), away’ (preverb: ‘to the sides, far and wide’): *vī.bāzu-* ‘(the length of) the arms held to out the sides’, *vī.āpa-* ‘from which the water has gone away, waterless’, *vidaēuua-* ‘keeping the *daēuua*s away’, *vī.xrūmaṅt-* ‘(a blow) that causes blood to flow to all sides’

Other compounds as well as their individual elements can be made from all kinds of words (nouns, adjectives, adverbs, and other compounds). If one member of the compound is a word that normally contains two parts (*ahura-* *mazdā-*, etc.), only one part can be used in the compound, e.g., *ahuraδāta-*, *mazdaδāta-* ‘established (‘created’) by Ahura Mazdā’.

Occasionally, however, we find compounds consisting of more than two members: YAv. *frādaṭ.viṣpam.hujiiāti-* ‘(the *ratu*) called “the one who furthers all good living”’, *druxš.vīdruxš* ‘who is the most lie-dispelling for the lie’, *draoyō.vāxš.draojišta-* ‘who belies the lying word the most’, and, especially, names of texts, e.g., *xšmāuuīia.gəuš.uruuā- hāti-* ‘the section beginning with *xšmāuuīia gəuš uruuā*’ (= Y 29).

The final vowel of the first member usually becomes *ō*, whether it is an *a-*, *ā-*, or *an-*stem (*daēuuō.dāta-* ‘established by *daēuuas*’; *daēnō.dis-* < *daēnā-* ‘showing (the path) to the *daēnā*’; *zruuō.dāta-* < *zruuan-*) ‘estab-

lished by/in time') or an invariable in *-a* (*hupō.busta-* < *upa* 'well-scented'; *haδō.zāta-* < *haδa* 'born together with > sibling'; *haptō.karšuuairi-* < *hapta* 'belonging to the seven continents').

Nouns as second members of compounds are sometimes in the zero grade, e.g., *frādat.ḥsu-* < *pasu-* 'cattle-furthering'; *daršidru-* < *dāru-* 'having a firm wooden club'; *ərduuafšni-* < *štāna-* 'having perky breasts'; *dar<sup>2</sup>.gāiiu-* < \**Hju-* < *āiiu-* 'long-lived'; *spitāma-* (3 syllables) < \**Hma-* < *ama-* 'having swollen power(?)'.

Some adjectives use an *i*-stem as the first member of a compound, e.g., *xšuuīβra-*: *xšuuīβi.išu-* 'having vibrant arrows'; *tiyra-*: *tiži.aršti-* 'having sharp spears'; *jafra-*: *ja<sup>i</sup>βi.vafra-* 'with deep snow'; *namra-*: *na<sup>m</sup>i.asu-* 'having soft shoots'; *bər<sup>2</sup>zaṇt-*: *bər<sup>2</sup>zi.gāθra-* 'singing loud songs'; \**x<sup>2</sup>anaṇt-*: *x<sup>2</sup>a<sup>i</sup>ni.raθa-* 'having singing wheels'.

The first member of a compound is often in a case form:

nom.: YAv. *aḥ.ciθra-*, *ātarš.ciθra-* 'containing the seed of water/fire', *aβ<sup>2</sup>zdāna-* (< *aḥs-d<sup>2</sup>*) 'being containers of water' (Y 42.2), *kər<sup>2</sup>ḥs.x<sup>2</sup>ar-* 'corpse-eater, scavenger', *dru<sup>2</sup>xš.manah-* 'having deception in one's thought';

acc.: OAv. *vər<sup>2</sup>θrəm.jan-* 'obstruction-smasher', *ahūm.biš-* 'world-healer', YAv. *vīrəṇjan-* 'man-smasher' < *vīrəm* + *jan-*; *aḥəm.stut-* 'praising Order'; *nasūm.kər<sup>2</sup>t-* 'corpse-cutter';

adverbial acc.: *dar<sup>2</sup>γəm.jiti-* 'long life';

gen. *drujas.kanā-* 'the den of the Lie', *z<sup>(2)</sup>mas.ciθra-* 'whose seed is in/ from the earth';

dat.: *yauuaēji-*, *yauuaēsū-* 'forever living, forever vitalizing';

loc.: *bər<sup>2</sup>zi.rāz-* 'ruling on high'; *armaē.šad-* 'sitting in peace'; *mai-ḥiīdi.šad-* 'sitting in the middle'; *raθaēštā-* 'who stands on a chariot, warrior'; *dūraēdər<sup>2</sup>s-* 'who sees far into the distance'.

### 3.8.3. "Open" compounds

A few combinations of independent words in Avestan correspond to compounds in Old Indic and are therefore commonly classified as compounds in Avestan, as well, but are called "open" because the terms are not formally joined.

#### *Open dvandvas*

These consist of two words in the dual. Their nature as compounds is revealed by the fact that each member of the *dvandva* can consist of only one word: OAv. *gāuuā azi* 'a bull and a (fertile) cow' (rather than: 'two fertile cows'); YAv. *miθra ahura* 'Miθra and Ahura (Mazdā)', *pasu vira* 'cattle and men', *āpa uruuāire* 'water and plants', *saṇhauuāci ar<sup>2</sup>nauuāci* 'the two (sisters) Saṇhauuāci and Arnauuāci', *ahuna \*a<sup>2</sup>riiamana* 'the (prayers) Ahuna (Vairiia) and (Ā) Airiia (Išiiō)', *aspa daēnu* 'a stallion and his mare(?)'.

#### *Repeated words*

The *āmreḍita* compounds are adverbial phrases consisting of repeated words: OAv. *narəm narəm* 'man for man'; YAv. *nmāne nmāne* 'in house for house'.

***Sigla and abbreviations***

°	part of compound or before enclitic (e.g., ° <i>dru-</i> in <i>darši-dru-</i> , <i>drao°</i> in <i>draoca</i> )
Av.	Avestan (Young and Old)
FO	<i>Frahang ī ōim</i>
Ilr.	Indo-Iranian
Ir.	Iranian
MPers.	Middle Persian
OAv.	Old Avestan
OYAv.	Old and Young Avestan
OInd.	Old Indic (especially Rigvedic)
OP	Old Persian
V	<i>Videvdad</i>
Y	<i>Yasna</i>
YAv.	Young Avestan
Yt.	<i>Yašt</i>

***Bibliography***<sup>37</sup>

- Allegri, Maurizio, and Antonio Panaino  
 1995 On the š-Ending in Old Persian *akunauš* and Similar Forms. With a Contribution by Ilya Gershevitch. Pp. 1–33 in *Proceedings of the Second European Conference of Iranian Studies*, ed. Bernd G. Fragner et al. Rome: Istituto Italiano per il Medio e Estremo Oriente.
- Andreas, Friedrich Carl  
 1904 Die Entstehung des Awesta-Alphabets und sein ursprünglicher Lautwert. Pp. 99–106 in *Verhandlungen des XIII. Internationalen Orientalisten-Kongresses. Hamburg September 1902*. Leiden: Brill.
- Bartholomae, Christian  
 1895–1901 Vorgeschichte der Iranischen Sprachen, Awestasprache und Altpersisch. Pp. 152–248 in *Grundriss der Iranischen Philologie*, ed. Wilh. Geiger and Ernst Kuhn. Strassburg: Trübner. Repr. Berlin: de Gruyter, 1974.
- Beekes, Robert S. P.  
 1988 *A Grammar of Gatha-Avestan*. Leiden: Brill.  
 1999 Review of *Avestische Laut- und Flexionslehre*, by Karl Hoffmann and Bernhard Forssman 1996. *Kratylos* 44: 62–71.
- Brandenstein, Wilhelm, and Manfred Mayrhofer  
 1964 *Handbuch des Altpersischen*. Wiesbaden: Harrassowitz.
- Duchesne-Guillemin, Jacques  
 1936 *Les composés de l'Avesta*. Liège: Faculté de Philosophie et de Lettres / Paris: E. Droz.
- Emmerick, Ronald E.  
 1992 Old Indian. Pp. 163–98 in *Indo-European Numerals*, ed. J. Gvozdanović. Trends in Linguistics. Studies and Monographs 57. Berlin: de Gruyter.
- Geldner, Karl Friedrich  
 1896 *Avesta the Sacred Book of the Parsis*. 3 vols. Stuttgart: Kohlhammer.

37. Hoffmann and Forssman 1996 contains an exhaustive bibliography by paragraph.

- Gershevitch, Ilya  
 1964 Zoroaster's Own Contribution. *Journal of the Near Eastern Society* 23: 12–38.  
 1995 Approaches to Zoroaster's Gathas. *Iran* 33: 1–29.  
 1967 *The Avestan Hymn to Mithra*. Cambridge: Cambridge University Press.
- Hinz, Walter  
 1973 *Neue Wege im Altpersischen*. Göttinger Orientforschungen 3/1. Wiesbaden: Harrassowitz.  
 1975 *Altiranisches Sprachgut der Nebenüberlieferungen*. Göttinger Orientforschungen 3/3. Wiesbaden: Harrassowitz.
- Hoffmann, Karl  
 1958 Altiranisch. Pp. 1–19 in vol. 1/4/1 of *Handbuch der Orientalistik*. Leiden: Brill.  
 1965 Zu den altiranischen Bruchzahlen. *Zeitschrift für vergleichende Sprachforschung* 79: 247–55. Repr. pp. 182–90, with addenda on p. 338 in vol. 1 of *Aufsätze zur Indoiranistik*, ed. Johanna Narten. Wiesbaden: Reichert, 1975.  
 1970 Zur awestischen Textkritik: Der Akk. Pl. mask. der *a*-Stämme. Pp. 187–200 in *W. B. Henning Memorial Volume*, ed. Mary Boyce and Ilya Gershevitch. London: Lund Humphries. Repr. pp. 274–87 in vol. 1 of *Aufsätze zur Indoiranistik*, ed. Johanna Narten. Wiesbaden: Reichert, 1975.  
 1975–92 *Aufsätze zur Indoiranistik*, ed. Johanna Narten. 3 vols. Wiesbaden: Reichert.  
 1976 Präteritaler Optativ im Altiranischen. Pp. 605–19 in vol. 2 of *Aufsätze zur Indoiranistik*, ed. Johanna Narten. Wiesbaden: Reichert.  
 1988 Avestan Language. Pp. 47–62 in vol. 3/1 of *Encyclopaedia Iranica*. London: Routledge and Kegan Paul.
- Hoffmann, Karl, and Johanna Narten  
 1989 *Der Sasanidische Archetypus*. Wiesbaden: Reichert.
- Hoffmann, Karl, and Bernhard Forssman  
 1996 *Avestische Laut- und Flexionslehre*. Innsbrucker Beiträge zur Sprachwissenschaft 84. Innsbruck: Institut für Sprachwissenschaft [Review: Beekes 1999].
- Jackson, A. V. Williams  
 1892 *An Avesta Grammar in Comparison with Sanskrit*. Stuttgart: Kohlhammer. Repr. Darmstadt: Wissenschaftliche Buchgesellschaft 1968.
- Jasanoff, Jay H.  
 1997 Gathic Avestan *cikōitərəš*. Pp. 119–30 in *Sound Law and Analogy. Papers in Honor of Robert S. P. Beekes*, ed. Alexander Lubotsky. Amsterdam: Rodopi.
- Kellens, Jean  
 1974 *Les noms-racines de l'Avesta*. Wiesbaden: Reichert.  
 1984 *Le verbe avestique*. Wiesbaden: Reichert.  
 1988 Avesta. Pp. 35–44 of vol. 3/1 of *Encyclopaedia Iranica*. London: Routledge and Kegan Paul [comprehensive biblio. pp. 42–44].  
 1989 Avestique. Pp. 32–55 In *Compendium Linguarum Iranicarum*, ed. Rüdiger Schmitt. Wiesbaden: Reichert.  
 1994 [1995] Retour à l'infinifit avestique. *Münchener Studien zur Sprachwissenschaft* 55: 45–59.

- 1995 *Liste du verbe avestique*. Wiesbaden: Reichert.
- 1998 Considérations sur l'histoire de l'Avesta. *Journal asiatique* 286: 451–519.
- Kent, Roland G.
- 1953 *Old Persian Grammar, Texts, Lexicon*. 2nd rev. ed. American Oriental Series 33. New Haven: American Oriental Society.
- Mayrhofer, Manfred
- 1978 *Supplement zur Sammlung der altpersischen Inschriften*. Sitzungsberichte der Österreichischen Akademie der Wissenschaften, philosophisch-historische Klasse, Veröffentlichungen der Iranischen Kommission 7. Vienna: Österreichische Akademie der Wissenschaften.
- Morgenstierne, Georg
- 1942 Orthography and Sound System of the Avesta. *Norsk Tidsskrift for Sprogvidenskap* 12: 30–82. Repr. pp. 31–83 in *Irano-Dardica*. Wiesbaden: Reichert, 1975.
- Pirart, Eric
- 1992 Les fragments vieil-avestiques du Y 58. *Annali dell'Istituto Universitario Orientale di Napoli* 52: 225–47.
- 1993 Avestique *janiiaoš*. *Indo-Iranian Journal* 36: 337–40.
- Reichelt, Hans
- 1909 *Awestisches Elementarbuch*. Heidelberg: Carl Winter. Repr. Darmstadt: Wissenschaftliche Buchgesellschaft, 1967.
- Schindler, Jochem
- 1986 Zum Jüngstwestischen: Die femininen Komparativa auf *-iiaiiā*. *Die Sprache* 32: 384–90.
- 1987 Zur avestischen Kompositionslehre: *aš*.- 'groß'. Pp. 337–48 in *Festschrift for Henry Hoeningwald . . .*, ed. George Cardona and Norman H. Zide. Tübingen: Gunter Narr.
- 1982 Zum Nom. sg. m. der *nt*-Partizipien im Jungavestischen. Pp. 186–209 in *Investigationes Philologicae et Comparativae. Gedenkschrift für Heinz Kronasser*, ed. Erich Neu. Wiesbaden: Harrassowitz.
- Schmitt, Rüdiger
- 1980 Altpersischforschung in den Siebzigerjahren. *Kratylos* 25: 1–66.
- 1991 *The Bisitun Inscriptions of Darius the Great*. Corpus Inscriptionum Iranicarum. London: Corpus Inscriptionum Iranicarum.
- 1997 Notgedrungene Beiträge zu westiranisch *st* versus *št* oder: Epigraphik und historische Dialektologie. *Incontri linguistici* 20: 121–30.
- 1999 *Beiträge zu altpersischen Inschriften*. Wiesbaden: Reichert.
- 2002 Onomastische Bemerkungen zu der Namenliste des *Fravardin Yašt*. Pp. 365–74 in *Religious Themes and Texts of Pre-Islamic Iran and Central Asia. Studies in Honour of Professor Gherardo Gnoli on the Occasion of His 65th Birthday on 6 December 2002*, ed. Carlo Cereti, Mauro Maggi, and Elio Provasi. Wiesbaden: Reichert.
- 2003 Die Sprache der Meder—eine grosse Unbekannte. Pp. 23–36 in *Continuity of Empire (?): Assyria, Media, Persia*, ed. Giovanni B. Lanfranchi, Michael Roaf, and Robert Rollinger. Padua: Sargon.
- Skjærvø, Prods Oktor
- 1998 Review of *Liste du verbe avestique*, by Jean Kellens. *Kratylos* 43: 190–91.



- 1999a [2002] Methodological Questions in Old Persian and Parthian Epigraphy. *Bulletin of the Asia Institute* 13: 157–67.
- 1999b [2002] Review of *Zamyād Yasht. Yasht 19 of the Younger Avesta. Text, Translation, Commentary*, by Helmut Humbach and Pallan R. Ichaporia. In *Bulletin of the Asia Institute* 13: 182–90.
- 2003–4 The Antiquity of Old Avestan. *Nāme-ye Irān-e Bāstān. The International Journal of Ancient Iranian Studies* 6 (= vol. 3/2): 15–41.
- 2005 Avestica III. Four Notes on Avestan Morphology. Pp. 196–97 in *Languages of Iran: Past and Present. Iranian Studies in Memoriam David Neil MacKenzie*, ed. Dieter Weber. Wiesbaden: Harrassowitz [pub. 2006].
- 2006 Iran IV. Iranian Languages and Scripts. Pp. 344–77 of vol. 13/3 of *Encyclopaedia Iranica*. New York: Encyclopaedia Iranica Foundation.
- Swennen, Philippe
- 1995 Les participes présents actifs dans l’Avesta. *Annali dell’Istituto Universitario Orientale di Napoli* 55: 207–16.
- Testen, David
- 1997 Old Persian and Avestan Phonology. Pp. 569–600 in *Phonologies of Asia and Africa*, ed. Alan S. Kaye. Winona Lake, IN: Eisenbrauns.
- Tremblay, Xavier
- 1996 Zum suffixalen Ablaut o/e in der athematischen Deklination des Indogermanischen. *Die Sprache* 38: 31–70.
- 1996 Un nouveau type apophonique des noms athématiques suffixaux de l’Indo-européen. *Bulletin de la Société de Linguistique de Paris* 91: 97–145.
- 1998 Sur *parsui* du Farhang-i-ōim, *ratu*, *pərətu-*, *pitu-* et quelques autres thèmes avestiques en *-u*. Essais de grammaire comparée des langues iraniennes III. *Studia Iranica* 27: 187–204.
- 1999 Ist jungawestisch *nāismi*, *nāist* Präsens oder sigmatischer Aorist? Pp. 537–43 in *Compositiones Indogermanicae in Memoriam Jochem Schindler*, ed. Heinz Eichner et al. Prague: Enigma.
- Vaan, Michiel de
- 2001 Avestan *vaēsmənda*. *Münchener Studien zur Sprachwissenschaft* 61: 185–92.
- 2003 *The Avestan Vowels*. Leiden Studies in Indo-European 12. Amsterdam: Rodopi.
- 2004 ‘Narten’ Roots from the Avestan Point of View. Pp. 591–99 in *Per aspera ad asteriscos. Studia Indogermanica in Honorem Jens Elmegard Rasmussen sexagenarii Idibus Martiis anno MMIV*, ed. Adam Hyllested et al. Innsbruck: Institut für Sprachen und Literaturen der Universität Innsbruck.
- Watkins, Calvert
- 2000 *sá figé* in Indo-Iranian and Anatolian. Pp. 263–71 in *Anusantatyai. Festschrift für Johanna Narten zum 70. Geburtstag*, ed. Almut Hintze and Eva Tichy. Dettelbach: J. H. Röhl.
- Westergaard, Niels L.
- 1852–54 *Zendavesta or the Religious Books of the Zoroastrians edited and translated with a dictionary, grammar, &c.* Vol. I. *The Zend Texts*. Copenhagen: Berling. Repr. with intro. by R. Schmitt, Wiesbaden: Reichert, 1994.

*Note on tables:* Since the Avestan corpus is so deficient, there is no good way to present the Avestan grammar in tables of actual forms. If one tries to make up forms, one is soon confronted with uncertainties. These tables, therefore, contain only attested forms, but not *all* attested forms. Many forms are also cited in the text above.

**Table 1: Ablaut**

	zero grade: -C	full grade: aC/Ca	lengthened grade: āC/Cā
Av.	<i>h-ənti, s-tā, z-dī, Ø-mahi</i>	<i>ah-mi, as-ti</i>	<i>āṇh-a</i>
	<i>ux-ta-</i>	<i>vac-</i>	<i>vāx-/vāc-</i>
	<i>da-δ-ən, da-s-ta</i>	<i>da-δā-mi (&lt; -daH-)</i>	
OP	<i>h-a<sup>n</sup>tiy</i>	<i>a<sup>h</sup>-miy, as-tiy</i>	
	<i>i</i>	<i>ai</i>	<i>āi/āy</i>
Av.	<i>ga<sup>h</sup>r-i-š; °i-ta-</i>	<i>gar-ōi-š; āe-<sup>h</sup>ti</i>	<i>gar-a</i>
OP	<i>cišp-i-š; °i-tā</i>	<i>cišp-ai-š; ai-tiy</i>	
	<i>u</i>	<i>au</i>	<i>āu</i>
Av.	<i>xšnu-ta-</i>	<i>xšnaoš-</i>	<i>xšnāu-š</i>
	<i>kər<sup>o</sup>-nu-</i>	<i>kər<sup>o</sup>-nao-, kər<sup>o</sup>-nauu-a-</i>	
	<i>gāt-u-</i>	<i>gāt-ao-š, gāt-uuō</i>	
OP	<i>°dahay-u-m</i>	<i>dahay-au-š</i>	<i>dahay-āu-š, dahay-āv-a</i>
	<i>durux-ta-; gāθ-u-</i>	<i>drauga-; gāθ-av-ā</i>	
	<i>n, a (&lt; ṇ)</i>	<i>an</i>	<i>ān</i>
Av.	<i>ašn-ō</i>		<i>asān-ō</i>
	<i>ja-<sup>h</sup>di</i>	<i>jan-aṭ</i>	
OP	<i>ja-diy</i>	<i>a-<sup>h</sup>jan-am</i>	
	<i>ā (&lt; ṇH)</i>	<i>nā (&lt; naH)</i>	
Av.	<i>ād-ra- (&lt; *ṇHd-ra-)</i>	<i>nā<sup>h</sup>d-iiah- (&lt; *naHd-<sup>h</sup>ah-)</i>	
	<i>m, a (&lt; ṃ)</i>	<i>am</i>	<i>ām</i>
Av.	<i>°gm-a<sup>h</sup>ti-</i>	<i>jēm-, jīm-a- (&lt; jam-)</i>	<i>jām-aiia-</i>
OP	<i>han-gm-ata</i>	<i>ā-<sup>h</sup>jam-iyā</i>	
	<i>r, ṛ</i>	<i>ar</i>	<i>ār</i>
Av.	<i>bər<sup>o</sup>-ta-</i>	<i>bar-a-</i>	<i>bār-aiia-</i>
OP	<i>kār-ta, ca-xr-iyā</i>	<i>°kar-a, car-tanaiy</i>	<i>u-cār-am;</i>
	<i>piça (&lt; *piθrah)</i>		<i>pit-ā, framā-tāram</i>
	<i>ar (&lt; ṛH)</i>	<i>ar, rā (&lt; arH, raH)</i>	
Av.	<i>dar<sup>o</sup>ya-</i>	<i>drāj-ah-</i>	
OP	<i>darga-</i>		

**Table 2: Alternations of stops**

	Stop:	Spirant:	
		unvoiced	voiced
p:	√ap	āf-š	a <sup>h</sup> β-iš
	√ptar	<i>p-<sup>a</sup>ta</i>	<i>f-<sup>o</sup>δrōi</i>
b:	√dab		<i>diβ-ža-, da<sup>h</sup>uu-iš</i>
	√gamb	<i>ja<sup>h</sup>f-ra-,</i>	<i>ja<sup>h</sup>βi-</i>
		<i>ja<sup>h</sup>f-nu-</i>	

**Table 2: Alternations of stops (cont.)**

	Stop:	Spirant:		Sibilant:	Nothing:	
		unvoiced	voiced			
t:	√ptar -tʰa t(u)ʰ-	p <sup>h</sup> t-a varš-tuua- tuuāṃ, OP tuvam OP maṛtiya- mār <sup>h</sup> -ta-	piθ-re ma-θβa- θβam OP θ <sup>h</sup> vām	f <sup>h</sup> δ-rōi vax- <sup>h</sup> δβa-	OP piça      mašiiia- OP <sup>h</sup> maṛ-šiyu-	
bār <sup>h</sup> t	<sup>h</sup> bār <sup>h</sup> -t-əm	<sup>h</sup> bār <sup>h</sup> -t-əm	mār <sup>h</sup> -θiiu-		<sup>h</sup> bār <sup>h</sup> -s	
d:	√dā  √band	dā-t  baṇd-aia-	da-θ-aṭ  da-δā-mi		da-z-di da-s-ta Av., OP bas-ta-	
	Stop:	Spirant:		Palatal:	Sibilant:	Nothing:
		unvoiced	voiced			
k:	√vak √tank -ank-	tak-aθra- parō.k-, parāg <sup>h</sup> t	vāx-š tax-ma-	vāc-im taṇc-išta- niiānc-ō	taš-iiāh- apaš-i-	para-š
g:	√aog √aog √draog	aog- <sup>h</sup> maide aog-ar <sup>h</sup> OP draug-a-	aox-ta  drux-š d <sup>h</sup> ruux-ta-	uγ-ra- draoy-a- druj-im d <sup>h</sup> ruj-iya-	aog-aite aog-ah- druž-a-	druu-aṇt-

**Table 3. Thematic verbs: present indicative**

	OAv.	YAv.	OP
Active			
sg.			
1	yāsā, auuāmī	<sup>h</sup> zbaia, yāsāmi; ufiemi	<sup>h</sup> barāmiy
2	<sup>h</sup> vaēnahi	pār <sup>h</sup> sahi; jaiḍiitehi	
3	bara <sup>h</sup> ti; dābaie <sup>h</sup> ti	baxšā <sup>h</sup> ti; uxšiiē <sup>h</sup> ti	<sup>h</sup> baratīy
du.			
3		barato; yu <sup>h</sup> ḍiiaθo	
pl.			
1	səṅhāmahi	yāsāmahi; fraēšiiāmahi, zbaiaimahi	Ṡahayāmaha y
2	išaθā		
3	išāṇti; vana <sup>h</sup> ṇti	<sup>h</sup> marāṇti, taciṇti; ja <sup>h</sup> ḍiieṇti, vār <sup>h</sup> ziṇti	bara <sup>h</sup> tiy
Middle			
sg.			
1		yeze (< *iāzai), <sup>h</sup> iiese (< *iāsai)	maniyaiy
2		vašāṅhe; xšaiiehe	
3	yaza <sup>h</sup> te	yaza <sup>h</sup> te, fraḍātae <sup>h</sup> ; maniiete	yadataiy
du.			
3	pār <sup>h</sup> saētē	carōiθe; <sup>h</sup> zaiiōiθe	
pl.			
1	yazama <sup>h</sup> dē, viśāmadae <sup>h</sup>	yazama <sup>h</sup> de; maniiāma <sup>h</sup> de	
2	ḍidrayžō.duiiē	<sup>h</sup> caraθβe	
3	frādāṇtē, haciṇtē; maniiēṇtē	yazāṇte, haciṇte	

**Table 4. Thematic verbs: present injunctive and imperfect**

	OAv.	YAv.	OP
Active			
sg.			
1	rādəm(?)	°barəm; bər°jaēm; baom	abaram
2	jasō; uxšiiō	apər°sō, jasō; dāesaiiō	°gaudaya
3	jasat; vər°ziiat	auuaēnaṭ, baraṭ, ja°ḍiiat	abara
du.			
3		jasatəm; ta <sup>u</sup> ruuaiiatəm	ajivatam
pl.			
1	ta <sup>u</sup> ruuaiiāmā		°atarayāmā
2		ta <sup>u</sup> ruuaiiata	
3	bānaiiēn	tacin; uxšin, °ḍaraiiēn, baon	abara <sup>n</sup>
Middle			
sg.			
1		aguze; °ba <sup>l</sup> re	amaniyaiy
2		°θβər°saṛḥa; °zaiiaṛḥa	
3	maniiātā	adauuata, barata; maniiata	
du.			
3	°jasaētəm	°caēšaētəm	
pl.			
3	°duuārəntā; maniiāntā	yazənta, fraor°ciṇta; ja <sup>l</sup> ḍiiānta; adāuṇta	agauba <sup>n</sup> tā

**Table 5. Thematic verbs: present subjunctive**

	OAv.	YAv.	OP
Active			
sg.			
1	zbaiiā, sēnghāni; ufiāni	azāni, jasāni; daēsaiieni	
2		barāhi, jasāi; °saocaiiāhi	vaināḥay
3	išat	barāt, jasā <sup>t</sup> i; <sup>l</sup> riθiiat	
pl.			
1		daēsaiiama	
2	azāθā		
3	išānti; vər°ziiān	°barān, barānti; °uxšiiān, ja <sup>l</sup> ḍiiānti	
Middle			
sg.			
1	isāi	yazāi, yazāne; hācāiene	kunavānaiy
2		pər°sārḥe; °pāriiārḥe	maniyāḥay
3		yazā <sup>t</sup> e; pa <sup>l</sup> ḍiiā <sup>t</sup> e	yadātaiy
pl.			
1	isāma <sup>l</sup> dē		
3	hacāntē	yazānte; vaziiānte	

**Table 6. Thematic verbs: present/preterital optative**

	OAv.	YAv.	OP
Active			
sg.			
2	rapōiš	barōiš; °ḍāraiiōiš; auuaēnōiš	
3	jasōiṭ	barōiṭ; zbaiiōiṭ; auuarōiṭ (< bara-)	kaṛiyaiš (passive) (post-OP akunaiy)
du.			
3		°caraiiatəm	
pl.			
1		jasaeṃa	
3		pacaiiən; °dar°zaiiaēn, °snāḍaiiən	
Middle			
sg.			
1	isōiiā	haxšaiia	
2		yazaēša; zbaiiaēša	yadaišā
3	var°ḍaiiaētā	azaēta; °snaiiaēta; °ḍaxšaiiaētā	
pl.			
1	vāurōima <sup>1</sup> di	°vaēnōima <sup>1</sup> di; bu <sup>1</sup> ḍiioima <sup>1</sup> ḍe	
2		rāmōiḍβəm	
3		māēzaiiaṇta; °snaiiiaṇta	akunavaya <sup>n</sup> tā

**Table 7. Thematic verbs: present imperative**

	OAv.	YAv.	OP
sg.			
2	pər°sā	jasā; nase, °uruuise (< -sīā)	paṛsā
3	vər°ziiō.tū	hacatu; mitaiiatu	baratuv
pl.			
2	jasatā	ḍuuarata; ḍaiiata	
3		patəṇtu, °uuāḍaiiaṇtu	
Middle			
sg.			
2		yāsaṇ <sup>v</sup> ha; varəḍaiiaṇ <sup>v</sup> ha	°paya <sup>h</sup> uvā
3	vər°ziiātəm	vər°ziiātəm	vəṛnavatām
pl.			
2	vaēdō.dūm	ḍāraiaḍβəm	
3	°xraosəṇtəm		

**Table 8. Athematic verbs: present indicative, root stems**

	OAv.	YAv.	OP
Active			
sg.			
1	ahmī, vas <sup>ə</sup> mī; mraomi, staomi	ahmi, staomi	a <sup>h</sup> miy
2	ahī, vaši, hafši	ahi, vaši	aḥay
3	asti, vašti, hapti, sāsti, aē <sup>i</sup> ti, šaē <sup>i</sup> ti	asti, ja <sup>h</sup> nti, aē <sup>i</sup> ti, stao <sup>i</sup> ti	astiy, ja <sup>n</sup> tiy, aitiy
du.			
1	usuuahi		
3		stō, °mrūtō	
pl.			
1	mahī, usōmahī	mahi, usmahi	a <sup>h</sup> mahay
2	stā, uštā		
3	hənti; ye <sup>h</sup> nti, šiie <sup>h</sup> nti	hənti	ha <sup>n</sup> tiy
Middle			
sg.			
1	aojōi, gər <sup>ə</sup> zōi; °mruiiē	mruie, °y <sup>ne</sup>	
2	°pā <sup>h</sup> hē		
3	vastē; isē(?)	°y <sup>ne</sup> , mruie, mrū <sup>i</sup> te, āste, saēte, vaste	
pl.			
1	aog <sup>ə</sup> madaē°	mrūma <sup>i</sup> de	
3		*°y <sup>nā</sup> re, mruuā <sup>i</sup> re, ā <sup>h</sup> hā <sup>i</sup> re, sōire/saēre, aoja <sup>i</sup> te, var <sup>h</sup> a <sup>i</sup> te	

**Table 9. Athematic verbs:  
present indicative, reduplicated and *n*-stems**

	OAv.	YAv.	OP
Active			
sg.			
1	daḍāmi, zaozaomī	daḍāmi, °frīnāmi, kər <sup>ə</sup> naomi, cinahmi	
2		daḍāhi, kər <sup>ə</sup> nūši	
3	dadā <sup>i</sup> ti; hunā <sup>i</sup> ti; vinasti	daḍā <sup>i</sup> ti, hiš.haxti, °grəβnā <sup>i</sup> ti, kər <sup>ə</sup> nao <sup>i</sup> ti, vinasti	kunautiy
pl.			
1	dad <sup>ə</sup> mahi; huuāmahī; friiāmahī; cišmahī	dānmahi (< dadm-)	
3	dada <sup>i</sup> ti	(thematic vindənti)	
Middle			
sg.			
1	°dadē, °iiōi; vər <sup>ə</sup> nē	pər <sup>ə</sup> ne (!pər <sup>ə</sup> nā-)	
3	dastē, dazdē; vər <sup>ə</sup> ntē	dazde, daste, °zūzušte, °gər <sup>ə</sup> ntē, viste	
du.			
3		zazā <sup>i</sup> te	
pl.			
1	dadəma <sup>i</sup> dē	daḍ <sup>ə</sup> ma <sup>i</sup> dē, cišma <sup>i</sup> dē	
2	mər <sup>ə</sup> ṅgduiē		
3	mər <sup>ə</sup> ṅca <sup>i</sup> tē		

**Table 10. Athematic verbs: present injunctive, root stems**

	OAv.	YAv.	OP
Active			
sg.			
1		mraom	
2	mraoš		
3	as, °jēn (jan-), tāšt, mraoṭ	ās, °āmraoṭ, mraoṭ	°aja <sup>n</sup> , āiš
du.			
1	ahuuā		
3		°āitəm	
pl.			
2	mraotā		
3		°āin (< *āijan)	āha <sup>n</sup> , °ajana <sup>n</sup>
Middle			
sg.			
1	aojī		
2	aoṣžā		
3	aog <sup>o</sup> dā, gər <sup>o</sup> ždā	°āmrūta, aoxta	°ajatā
pl.			
3			āha <sup>n</sup> tā, āya <sup>n</sup> tā

**Table 11. Athematic verbs: present injunctive, reduplicated and *n*-stems**

	OAv.	YAv.	OP
Active			
sg.			
1		daḍam, °diḍaēm (< -aiiam) (post-OP akunā[m])	
2	minaš		
3	°rūraost, didas, dadat, cinaoṭ, cinas	ādadaṭ, °akər <sup>o</sup> naoṭ, daḍat, kər <sup>o</sup> naoṭ	adadā, adānā, akunauš; (post-OP akunaš, akun <sup>a</sup> )
pl.			
2	d <sup>o</sup> b <sup>o</sup> naotā	°srinaota	
3	jigər <sup>o</sup> zaṭ, dadaṭ, mizən	kər <sup>o</sup> nāun	akunava, akunavaš
Middle			
sg.			
3		dasta, hunūta, °vər <sup>o</sup> ṇta	aku <sup>n</sup> tā
pl.			
3	vər <sup>o</sup> nātā		(thematic akunava <sup>n</sup> tā)

**Table 12. Athematic verbs: present imperative**

	OAv.	YAv.	OP
Active			
sg.			
2	zdi (< s-di), idi, ciždi	ja <sup>i</sup> ḍi, mrū <sup>i</sup> ḍi, stū <sup>i</sup> ḍi, dazdi, kər <sup>o</sup> nū <sup>i</sup> ḍi	°idiy, jadiy
3	astū, sāstū, mraotū, dadātū	astu, jaṇtu (jasa- √gam), mraotu	*astuv, dadātuv, kunautuv

**Table 12. Athematic verbs: present imperative (cont.)**

pl.			
2	°zān <sup>ā</sup> tā	staota, nista, dasta	°itā, jatā
3	hōṅtū	*həṅtu, °iianṅtu, °frinəṅtu	
Middle			
sg.			
2	dasuuā (< dad-sua)	dasuua	ku <sup>n</sup> šuvā
pl.			
2	sāzdūm, °idūm, °dazdūm		
3	jān <sup>ā</sup> rām, xrūn <sup>ā</sup> rām		

**Table 13. Athematic verbs: present subjunctive**

	OAv.	YAv.	OP
Active			
sg.			
1	aṅhā, aiieni	aṅha, °mrauuā, janāni, kər <sup>ā</sup> nauuāni, daθāni, aiieni, °mrauuāni	ahaniy
2		aṅhō, °mrauuāi, °daθō	āḥay (< *ahahi)
3	aṅhaṭ, vasat, °aiiat, mrauuat, dadat, aṅha <sup>i</sup> ti, mrauuat <sup>i</sup>	aṅhaṭ, hunauuat, daθat, frināt; aṅha <sup>i</sup> ti (aṅhā <sup>i</sup> ti)	ahatiy, *kunavātiy
pl.			
1	āṅhāmā	janāma, daθāma, viṇḍāma	
3	aṅhən, dadən, zazəṅti, kər <sup>ā</sup> naon	aṅhən, daθən, kər <sup>ā</sup> naon, *aiie <sup>ṅ</sup> ti	
Middle			
sg.			
1	aojai, šiauuāi, frināi	°mrauuāne, kər <sup>ā</sup> nauuāne	kunavānaiy
2	°iiaṅhā (vya)		
3	vər <sup>ā</sup> nauuātē	ər <sup>ā</sup> nauuataē°, daθa <sup>i</sup> te	kunavātaiy, vārnāvātaiy
pl.			
1		cinaθāmaide, hišcama <sup>i</sup> de	
3	dadəṅte	ər <sup>ā</sup> nauuāṅte, vər <sup>ā</sup> nauuāṅte	

**Table 14. Athematic verbs: present/preterital optative**

	OAv.	YAv.	OP
Active			
sg.			
1	xiioṃ (< (hi)-)		
2	xiia	janiia, mruia, da <sup>i</sup> θia, da <sup>i</sup> θiṣ, s <sup>u</sup> runuia, stər <sup>ā</sup> nuiia	
3	usiiat, mruiaat, paiaat; sahit, da <sup>i</sup> dit, mərəšiiat (< mər <sup>ā</sup> nc-ṭ-)	hiiat, da <sup>i</sup> dit, da <sup>i</sup> θiiat, kər <sup>ā</sup> nuiiat, čšiiat	avājaniyā (< ava-a-)
du.			
3		da <sup>i</sup> θitəm(?)	



**Table 14. Athematic verbs: present/preterital optative**

pl.			
1	ǰiiāmā		
2	ǰiiātā		
3		hiiār <sup>a</sup>	
Middle			
sg.			
1		tanuiia	
2		āhīša, °mruuiša, da <sup>1</sup> θīša	
3	da <sup>1</sup> ditā	aojīta, °γnīta, °mruuīta, da <sup>1</sup> θīta	

**Table 15. Aorist indicative and injunctive**

	OAv.	YAv.	OP
Active			
sg.			
1	darəsəm (vaēna), <sup>a</sup> cōišəm (cinah-); °vaocim (mrao- vvak)		
2	dā (dadā-), cōiš; daiš (daesaiia-); tašō (tāš-)	°uuaocō	
3	ē.vaocaṭ; dāt, cōišṭ, cōraṭ (kər <sup>o</sup> nao-), dōrəšt (vaēna- v <sup>d</sup> ars?), °jən (jasa-, vgam); xšnāuš (v <sup>x</sup> šnao), dārəšt (vaēna- v <sup>d</sup> ars?), səs (saḍaiia-), vās (vana-); tašaṭ, vaocaṭ	vaxšt (uxšiia-), °uuaocaṭ;	adā <sup>t</sup>
du.			
1	duuaidī		
pl.			
1	dāmā; ēuuaocāmā	°uuaocāma	
2	dātā	cōišta (P. 25?), dātā	
3	dān(?), gmən (jasa-), yūjən (yunag-); stāṅhaṭ (hišta-)		
Middle			
sg.			
1	cēuuiši (< *cōiši); fraši (pər <sup>o</sup> sa-), māṅhī (maniiia-)	°rāhi (rāsa-)	adaṛšiy (dāraya-)
2	dāṅhā		
3	maṅtā, ciuuištā (< *cōiš-); fraštā, maštā; gūsatā (gūš-)	°srita (srinao-), θraošta (v <sup>θ</sup> rao), varšta (vər <sup>o</sup> ziia-); mašta	
du.			
3	asruuātəm (s <sup>u</sup> runao-)		
pl.			
1	amāhma <sup>1</sup> dī (maniiia-), varəma <sup>1</sup> dī (vər <sup>o</sup> nā-)	°yaoxma <sup>1</sup> de (yunag-)	
2	daduiē		
3	dātā		

a. The corresponding present or root is given in parentheses.

**Table 16. Aorist subjunctive**

	OAv.	YAv.
Active		
sg.		
1	jimā (jasa-), darəsāni; dōišā, varəšā; vaocā, hanāni (hanaia-)	buua; *jaṅhāt
2	dāhi	°frā (vpar)
3	jima <sup>ti</sup> , jimaṭ, buuaṭ (bauua-), buua <sup>ti</sup> , dāt, dā <sup>ti</sup> ; naēšaṭ (naia-), varəšaiti, vəṅhaṭ (vana-), jəṅghati <sup>o</sup> (< jaṅ-h-; jasa); vaocāṭ, vidāt (vinad-), vidā <sup>ti</sup>	darəsaṭ (FO 14?); stāṅha <sup>ti</sup> , spāṅha <sup>ti</sup> (spaiia-); vaocāṭ
du.		
3	jamaētē	
pl.		
1	dāmā; nāšāmā (ašnao-); vaocāmā	jimama, darəsāma, vaocāma
2	caiaθā (cinao-), dātā	
3	°jiməṅ, buua <sup>ṅti</sup> , dṅ; xšnaošəṅ, varəšəṅti, vaṅhəṅ (vana-)	bun (< buṅ); jaṅhəṅti
Middle		
sg.		
1	xsāi (kasa-), mənāi, dānē; xšnaošāi, varəšāne, haxšāi, məṅhāi	°uuarāne; grəššāne (grəβnā-)
2	dāṅhē; rāṅhaṅhōi (rasa-)	
3		°dā <sup>te</sup> , °vara <sup>te</sup>
pl.		
3	ārəṅtē (əṛ <sup>o</sup> nao-), yaojaṅtē, dāṅtē	°dāṅte

**Table 17. Aorist optative**

	OAv.	YAv.	OP
Active			
sg.			
1	diiṅm		
2	—	jamiia, dāiia, buiia	biyā <sup>h</sup>
3	diiāt, saxiiāt (səṅha-); sišōiṭ (sāh-)	°asiiaṭ (ašnao-), jamiiāt, buiiāt, va <sup>ni</sup> ṭ; °jaṅhōiṭ, zahiṭ (zazā-); vaocōiṭ	
pl.			
1	zaēmā (zazā-), vaocaēmā, hanaēmā	jamiia, buiia, nāšima (ašnao-)	
3		jamiiaṅ, buiiaṅ, jamiiār <sup>o</sup> š, buiiār <sup>o</sup> š	
Middle			
sg.			
1	diiā		
2	dīšā	xšaēša, hanaēša	
3	xšaētā (xšaiia-)		

**Table 18. Aorist Imperative**

	OAv.	YAv.	OP
Active			
sg.			
2	dā <sup>i</sup> dī, ga <sup>i</sup> dī (jasa-), cīždi; vaocā	dā <sup>i</sup> dī	
3	dātū, jaṅtū (jasa-)	pātū (pāiia-), bar <sup>o</sup> tu (bara-)	pātuv (paya-)
pl.			
2		dāiiaa(?), buiiaa	
3	scaṅtū (haca-)		
Middle			
sg.			
2	dāhuuā, kər <sup>o</sup> šuuā; frašuuā; gūšahuuā		
3	ḍam, uḍam (mrao- vvak)	bər <sup>o</sup> tam	
pl.			
2	θrāzdūm (θrāiia-); gūšōdūm		

**Table 19. Perfect indicative**

	OAv.	YAv.
Active		
sg.		
1		cikaēθa (cinaθ-), dādarəsa (vaēna-), diduuāēša (d <sup>ai</sup> bišiiia-), <sup>o</sup> uruaōḍa (raoḍa-)
2	dadāθā	dadāθa, vauuaxḍa (mrao- vvak)
3	tataša, <sup>o</sup> nānāsā (nasiia-), hišaiiā (hiia-)	bauuara (bara-), buuāuuā (bauua-), cakana (vkan), daḍa, daḍāra, hušx <sup>v</sup> afa (x <sup>v</sup> afsa-), tataša, vauuaca, viuuaēḍa (vinad-), yaēša (aēšaiia-), yaiiata (yātaiia-)
du.		
3		yaētatar <sup>o</sup> (yātaiia-), vaocātarē, vāuuər <sup>o</sup> zātar <sup>o</sup>
pl.		
1	vaoxəmā	diduuišma, susruma
3	āṅhar <sup>o</sup> (ah-)	āṅhar <sup>o</sup> , dāḍar <sup>o</sup> , baβrar <sup>o</sup> , bābuuar <sup>o</sup> (bauua-), vaonar <sup>o</sup> ,
	cāxnar <sup>o</sup> (vkan), vaonar <sup>o</sup> (vana-)	<sup>i</sup> iriθar <sup>o</sup> ( <sup>i</sup> riθiia-), <sup>o</sup> šastar <sup>o</sup> (nišad-), cāxrar <sup>o</sup> (kər <sup>o</sup> nao-)
Middle		
sg.		
1		susruiie (s <sup>u</sup> runao-)
3	ārōi (ər <sup>o</sup> nao-), dādrē, pafrē ( <sup>2</sup> pər <sup>o</sup> nā-), vāuuər <sup>o</sup> zōi	da <sup>i</sup> ḍe, mamne, vaoce, vaoze (vaza-), tuθruie
du.		
3		mamnāite (maniiia-)

**Table 20. Pluperfect**

	OAv.	YAv.
Active		
sg.		
3		jaṣmaṭ (or sbjv.)
pl.		
3	cikōitər <sup>ə</sup> š	

**Table 21. Perfect subjunctive**

	OAv.	YAv.
Active		
sg.		
3		jaṣmaṭ (or plupf.), tatašaṭ
pl.		
2	vaorāzaθā	
3		iieiiṇ
Middle		
sg.		
3		°pāfraite

**Table 22. Perfect optative**

	YAv.	OP
Active		
sg.		
1	jaṣmiiṇ (jasa-), da <sup>i</sup> ḍiiṇ (diḍaē-), °śušuiiṇ (śauua-)	
3	āṅhāt (ah-), vaoniiāt (vana-), °hisiḍiiāt (vsaed), °hazdiiāt (hiḍa-)	caxriyā <sup>t</sup> (kunau-)
du.		
3	āṅhāt.təm	
pl.		
3	da <sup>i</sup> ḍin, °baβriiṇ, °saciiār <sup>ə</sup> š (saca-)	
Middle		
pl.		
3	vaozirəm (vaza-)	

**Table 23. āda-, vaēda**

	Indicative		Subjunctive	Optative	
	OAv.	YAv.	OAv.	YAv.	OAv.
sg.					
1	āda, vaēda	vaēθa°	vaēda (-a <sup>2</sup> a)		
2	vōistā			vaēθaṭ	
3	vaēdā	vaēḍa			vidiiāt
pl.					
3	ādar <sup>ə</sup>	ādar <sup>ə</sup> , *viḍar <sup>ə</sup>		vaēθəṅti	
Middle					
sg.					
3		ā <sup>i</sup> ḍe			

Lists of cited verbs by present stems or root.

*a*-stems:

*aēšaiia-* 'seek', *auua-* 'help', *aza-* 'lead, drive', *bṇaiia-* 'sicken', *bara-* 'carry', *bauua-* 'become', *baxša-* 'distribute, give', *bəṛəjaiia-* 'strengthen(?)', *bu'diia-* 'become aware (of)', *caēša-* 'pile up(?)', *cara-* 'walk', *dāesaiia-* 'show', *dauua-* 'tell lies', *daxšaiia-* 'mark(?)', *dābaiia-* 'make deceive', *dāiia-* 'give', *dāraiia-* 'hold', *d<sup>ai</sup>bišiiia-* 'harm', *dar<sup>ə</sup>zaiia-* 'chain', *dīd<sup>ə</sup>rayža-* 'wish to hold', *dūuāra-* 'run', *fraēšiiia-* (< *fra-išiiia-*) 'send', *fraorəca-* (< *fra-uuəṛca-*) 'catch up (with)(?)', *frāda-* 'further', *gauba-* (mid.) 'call oneself', *gaudaya-* 'hide', *guza-* 'hide', *haca-* 'follow', *hanaiia-* 'gain', *haxša-* 'follow', *hācaiia-* 'make follow', *hiḍa-* 'sit', *hiia-* 'tie', *hišta-* 'stand', *°iiasa-* (< *vyam*) 'take', *isa-* 'be able', *iša-* 'come', *ja'diia-* 'ask for', *jas-* (< *√gam/jam*) 'come', *jiva-* 'live', *kasa-* 'see', *maēza-* 'urinate', *maniiia-*, *maniya-* 'think', *mara-* 'remember', *mitaiia-* 'dwell(?)', *naiia-* 'lead', *nasiia-* 'perish', *paca-* 'cook', *nišad-* 'sit', *pa'diia-* 'lie, fall', *pata-* 'fall', *pāiia-*, *pay-* 'guard', *pāraiia-* 'help to pass', *pəṛsa-* 'ask', *rapa-* 'support', *raoḍa-* 'loose, leave out', *rāda-* 'direct(?)', *rāma-* 'rest', *rāsa-* 'give', *riθiia-* 'die', *°ruuīšiiia-* 'wring', *saca-* 'pass, go', *saḍaiia-* 'seem', *saocaiia-* 'burn (trans.)', *səṇha-* 'announce', *taca-* 'run', *snāiia-* 'wash', *spaiia-* 'throw (away)', *šauua-* 'go', *taraya-* 'cross over', *ta<sup>h</sup>ruuaiia-* 'overcome', *θahaya-* 'be said', *θβəṛsa-* 'cut, fashion', *θrāiia-* 'protect', *ufiia-* 'weave', *uxšiiia-* 'grow', *vaēda-* 'find', *vaēna-* 'see', *vana-* 'overcome', *var<sup>ə</sup>daiia-* 'make grow', *vaša-* 'move up and down', *vāḍaiia-* 'lead', *vāura-* (< *\*uā-ur-*) '?', *vəṛziia-* 'work, act', *viša-* 'be ready', *xšaiia-* (mid.) 'rule (over)', *yaza-*, *yada-* 'sacrifice (to)', *yātaiia-* 'put in order', *xraosa-* 'howl', *x<sup>ə</sup>afsa-* 'sleep', *yāsa-* 'ask for', *yu'diia-* 'fight', *zaiia-* 'be born', *zbaiia-* 'invoke'.

Root stems:

*aē-* (*ai-*)/*i-* 'go', *ah-/h-* 'be', *aog-* 'declare', *āh-* 'sit', *gəṛəz-* 'complain', *gūš-* 'listen', *hap-* 'seize', *jan-/yn-* 'smash', *mrao-/mru-* 'say', *naid-/nid-* 'blame, scorn', *saē-* 'lie', *sāh-* instruct', *stao-/stu-* 'praise' (see Vaan 2004), *šiiuu-* 'set in motion', *tāš-* 'fashion', *vah-* 'don, wear', *vas-/us-* 'wish'.

*na*-stems:

*cinah-/ciš-* 'assign', *cinaθ-* 'mark(?)', *məṛənak-/məṛəṇk-* 'destroy', *minaz-/miz-* (< *miz-*) 'tend(?)', *vinad-/viṇd-* 'find', *yunag-/yuj-* 'yoke'.

*nā*-stems:

*dānā-* 'know, *savoir*', *frīnā-/frīn-* 'invite as guest-friend', *gəṛənā-/gəṛən-* 'welcome', *grəβnā-* 'take', *pəṛənā-/pəṛən-* '1. overcome; 2. fill' *vəṛənā-/vəṛən-* 'chose', *xrūnā-/xrūn-* 'bleed (trans.)', *zānā-/zān-* 'know, *savoir*'.

*nao*-stems:

*ašnao-* 'reach', *cinao-* 'collect', *d<sup>ə</sup>bənao-* 'deceive', *əṛənao-* 'set in motion', *kəṛənao-/kəṛənu-*, *kunau-* 'do', *srinao-* 'lean', *stəṛənao-* 'spread', *tanao-* 'stretch', *vəṛənao-* 'cover(?)', *varnau-* (impers.) 'believe'.

Reduplicated stems:

*dadā-/dad-* 'give', *diḍaē-/diḍii-* 'see', *dīd<sup>ə</sup>h-* 'learn(?)', *hiš.hak-/hišc-* 'follow', *jiḡəṛəz-* 'complain repeatedly', *hunā-/hun-* 'impel', *iia-* (*īā-* < *vyā*) 'ask

for', <sup>u</sup>rūraod- 'howl', zaozao- 'call repeatedly', zazā-/zaz- 'leave behind', zūzuš- 'enjoy'.

Only perfect forms:

ād- 'say', vaēd- 'know'.

Roots without attested present stems:

√dars (pres. vaēna-, vaina-) 'see', √kan 'love', √par 'traverse', √saēd 'cut', √θrao 'assemble(?)', √xšnao 'favor'.

**Table 24. Nouns and adjectives. *a*-stems**

	OAv.	YAv.	OP
sg.			
N	ahurō, ciθrē, akas°	ahurō (-ras°), ma <sup>i</sup> riiō, gaiiō, daēuuō	pārsa
V	ahurā	ahura, ma <sup>i</sup> re	martiyā
A	ahurēm; pa <sup>u</sup> ruuim, gaēm	ahurēm; ma <sup>i</sup> rim; gaēm, daē(uu)ūm	pārsam
NAn <sup>a</sup>	xšaθrēm, pauruuim	nmānēm, ha <sup>i</sup> θim, ho <sup>u</sup> rum, vidōiiūm	xšačam
I (I Abl.)	sōṅghā; xšaθrā	yasna, x <sup>v</sup> aēpa <sup>i</sup> θe	pārsā
D	ahurāi, ahurāi.ā	ahurāi	
A	zaošāt, virāat°	nmānāt, xšaθrāda	
G(GD)	ahurahiiā, spəntaxiiā°; pa <sup>u</sup> ruiihiiā, zaraθuštrahe	ahurahe, ašarjha°; ma <sup>i</sup> riiēhe, gaiēhe	pārsahayā
L	sōṅhe, mar <sup>o</sup> kae°, šiiioθ <sup>a</sup> nōi, x <sup>v</sup> aθrōiiā	xšaθre, ahur <sup>e</sup> , zastaiia	pārsaiy, dastayā
du.			
NVA	zastā, pa <sup>u</sup> ruiiē	ahura, gaoša	gaušā
NAn.	šiiioθ <sup>a</sup> nōi	šiiioθne	
ID Abl.	zastōibiiā (them. pādauue)	ahuraē <sup>i</sup> biiā, *gaošaē <sup>i</sup> βe	dastaibiyā
G	rānaiiā	(thematic pādaiiā)	gaušayā
L	zastaiiō, ubōiiō		
pl.			
NV	mašiiā, mašiiāṅhō; pa <sup>u</sup> ruiiē	yazata, yazatāṅhō, a <sup>i</sup> re	martiyā, aniyāhā
A	mašiiōṅh, sōṅghas°	yazatō, yazatās°, haoma, daē(uu)ū	martiyā
NAn.	šiiioθ <sup>a</sup> nā	nmāna (fem. nmānā)	āyadanā
I (I Abl.)	mašiiāiš	zastāiš	martiyaiβiš
D Abl.	mar <sup>o</sup> taē <sup>i</sup> biiō, yasnōibiiō; dātō <sup>i</sup> biiās°	yazataē <sup>i</sup> biiō	
G (GD)	yasnanām	yazatanām	martiyānām
L	mašiiāēšū	yazataēšū, yazataēšuuā	mādaišuvā

a. NAn. = nominative-accusative neuter. Old Persian cases are in parenthesis: I (I Abl.) means the form is Av. instrumental, but OP instrumental-ablative.

*a*-stems: *ahura*- 'lord', *aka*- 'evil', *a<sup>i</sup>riia*- 'Aryan', *aša*- '(cosmic/ritual) order', *āyadana*- 'place of sacrifice', *ciθra*- 'luminous(?)', *dāta*- 'law', *gaoša*- (*gauša*-) 'ear', *haoma*-, *mar<sup>a</sup>ka*- 'destruction', *mar<sup>o</sup>ta*- 'mortal', *mašiiā*-, *martiya*- 'man', *māda*- 'Median', *nmāna*- 'house', *pārsa*- 'Persia, Persian', *rāna*-

'thigh', *səŋgha-* 'announcement', *spənta-* 'life-giving', *vīra-* 'man', *šiiəθna-* 'action, work', *uba-* 'both', *xšaθra-* (*xšaça-*) '(royal) command', *xvāθra-* 'comfort', *yasna-* 'sacrifice', *yazata-* 'deity', *zaoša-* 'taste, pleasure', *zasta-* (*dasta-*) 'hand'; – *iia-* stems: *aniia-* (*aniya-*) 'other', *gaiia-* 'life', *gāiia-* 'step', *ha'θiia-* 'real, true', *mašiiia-* (*martiya-*) 'mortal man', *pa<sup>u</sup>ruuiia-* 'former, first', *x<sup>v</sup>aēpa'θiia-* 'own'; – *uua-* stems: *aēuua-* 'one', *daēuua-* 'demon', *gauua-* 'milk', *hauruua-* 'whole', *vidaēuua-* 'discarding the demons'.

**Table 25. Nouns and adjectives. Feminine *ā-* stems**

	OAv.	YAv.	OP
sg.			
N	daēnā; pa <sup>u</sup> ruiiē	daēna; na're	hainā
V	bə <sup>r</sup> xδē	daēne	
A	daēnəm	daēnəm	taumām
I (I Abl.)	daēnā, daēnaiia	daēnaiia	haināyā
D	daēnaiiāi	daēnaiiāi, gaēθiāi	
Abl.		daēnaiiāt, uruuaraiiāt <sup>o</sup>	
GAbl. (GD)	daēnaiiā	daēnaiiā(s <sup>o</sup> )	taumāyā
L	—	grīuuaiia	aθurāyā
du.			
NVA	ubē	uruua're	
ID Abl.	—	vaθβābiiia	
G (GL)	—	nā'rikaiiā	
pl.			
NVA	daēnā, -ā(s <sup>o</sup> )	daēnā(s <sup>o</sup> )	stūnā
I (I Abl.)	daēnābiš	daēnābiš	
D Abl.	daēnābiiō	daēnābiiō, gaēθāuu <sup>a</sup> iio, vōiy <sup>n</sup> āuiiō	
G (GD)	sāsnanəm	gaēθanəm	<sup>o</sup> zanānām
L	gaēθāhū	gaēθāhu, gaēθāhuua	maškāuvā

*aθurā-* 'Assyria', *bə<sup>r</sup>xδē-* 'worth strengthening(?)', *daēnā-* 'vision, soul', *gaēθā-* 'living being', *grīuuā-* 'ridge', *hainā-* '(enemy) army', *maškā-* 'inflated hide', *na'riiā-* 'woman', *nā'rikā-* 'woman', *sāsnā-* 'instruction', *stūnā-* 'column', *taumā-* 'family', *uruuarā-* 'plant', *vaθβā-* (dual, plural) 'flock', *vōiy<sup>n</sup>ā-* kind of disaster, *zanā-* 'of many kinds'.

**Table 26. Nouns and adjectives. Feminine *i-* stems**

	OAv.	YAv.	OP
sg.			
N	nā'ri, vaŋ <sup>v</sup> hi	ašaoni; <sup>o</sup> staoiiehi	uvārazmīy, uvārazmiš
V		ašaoni	
A	təuuišim, vaŋ <sup>v</sup> hīm	ašaonīm; masiieħīm	harauvatīm
I (I Abl.)	vaŋhuiiā	xraoždiiēhiia	harauvatīyā
D	ušiāi	ašaoniiāi	
Abl.		bar <sup>o</sup> θriiāt	
GAbl. (GD)	aziā, vaŋhuiiā	ašaoniiā, arduiā	harauvatīyā
L		pə <sup>r</sup> θβe(?)	harauvatīyā

**Table 26. Nouns and adjectives. Feminine *i*-stems (cont.)**

du.		
NVA	azi	
pl.		
NVA	aziš, vaŋ <sup>v</sup> hiš	ašāonš; masiiehiš
I		āzizanā <sup>1</sup> tibiš
DAbI.	šiie <sup>1</sup> tibiiō	ašāonibiiō
G (GD)		ašāonŋam
L		xšaθrišu, xšaθrišuua

*arəduui-* epithet of a goddess, *ašāoni-* < *ašāuuan-* 'righteous', *āzi-* pregnant', *āzizanā<sup>1</sup>ti-* 'about to give birth', *bar<sup>o</sup>θri-* 'womb', *harauvati-* 'Arachosia', *masiiehi-* < *masita-* 'large', *nā<sup>1</sup>ri-* 'woman', *pə<sup>o</sup>θβi-* < *pə<sup>o</sup>tu-* 'broad', *staoiiehi-* < *stūra-* 'thick', *təuušiši-* 'strength(?)', *uši-* 'hearing(?)', *vaŋ<sup>v</sup>hi-* < *vaŋhu-* 'good', *xraoždiiehi-* < *xrūždra-* 'hard', *xšaθri-* 'female', *šiieiti-* (< \**šiīati-*) 'settlement', *uvārazmi-* 'Chorasmia'.

**Table 27. Nouns and adjectives. *i-* and *aē-*stems**

	OAv.	YAv.	OP	OAv.	YAv.
sg.					
N	ārma <sup>1</sup> tiš	ga <sup>1</sup> riš	šiyātiš	<sup>o</sup> haxā	kauua, haxa
V	ārma <sup>1</sup> tē	hāuuane			
A	ārma <sup>1</sup> tim	ga <sup>1</sup> rīm	šiyātim	<sup>o</sup> haxāim	kauuaēm, haxāim
NAn.	būiri <sup>o</sup>	āhū <sup>1</sup> ri	vasiy(?)		
I (IAbI.)	ārma <sup>1</sup> ti	axti			haša
D	axtōiiōi;	ziīānaiiaē <sup>o</sup> , patāe;			haše
	pa <sup>1</sup> θiiaē <sup>o</sup>	pa <sup>1</sup> θe			
GAbI. (GD)	ārvatōiš	garōiš	fravartaiš		
Abl.		garōit			
L		gara			
du.					
NVA	ənə <sup>1</sup> ti, x <sup>v</sup> iti <sup>o</sup>	baō <sup>1</sup> di; aši	uši <sup>v</sup> (?)		haša
IDAbI.		ašibiia			
pl.					
NV	ārmataiiō	garaiiō		kāuuaiias <sup>o</sup>	haxaiiō, xštāuuaiiō
A	ištiš	ga <sup>1</sup> rīš	arašniš		
NAn.		zaraθuštri			
DAbI.		frauuašibiiō			xštəuuīβiiō
G (GD)		ga <sup>1</sup> riŋam			kaoiŋam, hašam

*arašni-* 'ell', *aši-* neut. '(evil) eye', *axti-* 'pain', *āhū<sup>1</sup>ri-* 'ahurian', *ārmaiti-* deity, *baō<sup>1</sup>di-* 'incense', *būiri-* 'plenty', *ənə<sup>1</sup>ti-* < \**an-iti-* 'trouble', *fravarti-* proper name, *frauuašiši-* immortal soul of men, *ga<sup>1</sup>ri-* 'mountain', *haxaē-* 'companion', *išti-* 'wish or ritual', *kauuaē-* 'poet-priest', *paiti-* 'master, husband', *šiyāti-* 'happiness', *uši* (dual) 'hearing, understanding', *vasi-* 'much',



*xštauii-* a people(?), *x<sup>v</sup>iti-* < \**hu-iti-* ‘comfort’, *zaraθuštri-* ‘like Zarathustra’, *ziiāni-* ‘harm’. On *raē-*, see §3.2.1.

**Table 28. Nouns and adjectives. *u*-stems**

	OAv.	YAv.	OP
sg.			
N	aṅhuš	ratuš, maniiuš	marguš
V		ratuuō, maniiō	
A	ahūm	ratūm	margum
NAn.	vohū	pouru	paruv
I (Iabl.)	ahū, xratū; xraθβā	vohu; xraθβa	bābirauš, bābirauv
D	vaṅhauuē; ahuiiē	maniiuuē; aṅ <sup>v</sup> he, xraθβε	
GAbl. (GD)	aṅhōuš, paraoš	maniiāoš; pasuuō, xraθβō	kurauš
Ab		maniiāoṭ	
L	pər <sup>o</sup> tao, xratā	gātuūō, gātauuā	margauv, gāθavā
du.			
NVA	maniiū	maniiu	
IDabl.	ahubiā	bāzubiā, bāzuβe	
G	ma <sup>i</sup> niuuā, ahuuā		
L	aṅhuuō		
pl.			
NV	xratauuō	ratauuō; pasuuō	
A	xratūš, pourūš	baršnūš	
NAn.		pouru	
I (Iabl.)		*auuaṅhuuiš(?)	
DAbI.	pourubiiō	ratubiiō, hinuu <sup>i</sup> βiiō	
G (GD)	vohunāṃ	vohunāṃ; pasuuāṃ, raθβāṃ	parū(v)nām
L	pourušū	vaṅhušu, pasuš.huua	

*ahu-* ‘existence’, *auuaṅhu-* ‘not good’, *baršnu-* ‘height’, *bābiru-* ‘Babylon’, *bāzu-* ‘arm’, *gātu-* ‘place, throne’, *hinu-* ‘?’, *kuru-* ‘Cyrus’, *maniiu-* ‘spirit’, *margu-* ‘Merv’, *pasu-* ‘sheep’, *pa<sup>u</sup>ru-* ‘much’, *pər<sup>o</sup>tu-* ‘ford’, *ratu-* ‘(divine) prototype’, *vahu-* ‘good’, *xratu-* ‘wisdom’.

**Table 29. Nouns and adjectives. Ambikinetic *u*-stems**

	OAv.	YAv.	OP
sg.			
NAn.	āiiū	āiiu; dā <sup>u</sup> ru (zānu <sup>o</sup> )	dāruv
I	yauuā	āiiu, yauuā	
D	yauuōi	yauue, yauuāē <sup>o</sup>	
GAbl.	yaoš	aiiāoš, yaoš; draoš	
L		drao <sup>o</sup>	
pl.			
DAbI.		žnubiiās <sup>o</sup>	

*āiiu-/yao-/°yu-* ‘life/time span’, *dā<sup>u</sup>ru-/drao-/°dru-* ‘wood’, *zānu-/žnu-/°xšnu-* ‘knee’.

**Table 30. Nouns and adjectives. *ao*-stems**

	OAv.	YAv.	OAv.	YAv.	OP
sg.					
N	gāuš	gāuš	°bāzauš		dahayāuš
V		gao°			
A	gam	gam		daṅhaom, nasāum	dahayāum, dahayāvam
D	gauuōi	gauue			
GAbl.	gēuš	gēuš, diiaoš			
Abl.		gaoṭ			
L					dahayauvā
du.					
NVA	gāuuā	gāuuā		bāzauuā	
G		°gauuā			
pl.					
NV		gauuō		daṅhāuuō	dahayāva
A	gā	gā			
I		gaobiš			
G (GD)		gauuam			dahayūnām
L					dahayušuva

°*bāzu-* ‘having . . . arms’, *daṅhu-/dahayu-* ‘land’, *diiao-* ‘heaven’, *gao-* ‘bull, cow’.

**Table 31. Nouns and adjectives. Laryngeal *i-* and *ū-*stems**

	i-stems		OP	ū-stems		OP
	YAv.			OAv.	YAv.	
sg.						
N	°jīš	zarānaēniš		fs°ratuš	°sūš	tanuš
A	°jīm	zarānaēnīm		tanuuōm, *sūm	tanūm	tanūš
I (IAbl.)		zarānaēniia		fs°ratūm		tanūm
D				hizuuā		
D				tanuiiē	tanuiie	
Abl.					tanuuat	
Abl.G		°f°ḍriiō		°tanuuō, hizuuō	°suuō	tanuuō
L					tanuui	
du.						
NVA	friia					
pl.						
NVA	jiiō	tištriiāēniias°	aθa <sup>n</sup> gainiya	tanuuō		
I				hizubiš		
D Abl.					tanubiiō	
G					tanuṅam	
L				*tanušu°	tanušu	

*aθa<sup>h</sup>gaina-* ‘of stone’, *fri-* ‘friendly’, *°ji-* ‘living’, *zarənaēna-* ‘of gold’, *°f<sup>h</sup>δri-* ‘having a . . . father’, *f<sup>h</sup>ratū-* ‘?’, *hizū-* ‘tongue’, *°sū-* ‘revitalizing’, *tanū-* ‘body’, *tištriiaēni-* (pl.) ‘Pleiades’.

**Table 32. Nouns and adjectives. Stems in labial stops (p)**

	OAv.	YAv.	OP
sg.			
N		afš, kər <sup>h</sup> fš	(ap <sup>h</sup> [š])
A	kəhrpəm	āpəm, kəhrpəm	
I		apa, kəhrpa	
D		ape, apae <sup>o</sup> ; xšape	
GAbl. (GD)		āpō, kəhrpō, xšapō	xšapa
Ab		apaṭ	xšapaṭ
L		apaiia, kəhrpiia	āpiya
du.			
NVA		āpa	
pl.			
N		āpō, kəhrpas <sup>o</sup>	
A	apō	āpō	
I			ābiš
DAbl.		aiβiiō	
G	kəhrpəm	apəm, kəhrpəm	

āp- ‘water’, kəhrp- ‘body’, xšap- ‘night’.

**Table 33. Nouns and adjectives. Stems in velar stops (k, g, nk)**

	k-stems		nk-stems	g-stems	
	OAv.	YAv.		OAv.	YAv.
sg.					
N	vāxš, °haxš	vāxš, °mər <sup>h</sup> xš °haxš	apaš, pa <sup>h</sup> ti.iiāš, viš	usixš, druxš	druxš
A	vācəm	vācim	°niiāncim, huna <sup>h</sup> riiāncim	drujəm, būjim	drujəm/-jim, °bujim
NAn.		°hāg <sup>h</sup> t			
I	sūcā	vaca	parāca, vica		
GAbl. vacō		vacō, °mər <sup>h</sup> cō		drūjō	drūjō
Abl.					drujaṭ
pl.					
N		vācō	niiāncō, huna <sup>h</sup> riiāncō		°drujō
A		vacō			
I		vāy <sup>h</sup> biš			
DAbl.		vāy <sup>h</sup> βiiō			
G		vacəm			adružəm

*adruj-* ‘having no deception’, *apānk-* ‘backward’, *buj-* ‘deliverance’, *drug-/druj-* ‘deception’, *°hāk-* ‘following’, *huna<sup>h</sup>riiānk-* ‘skillful’, *°mər<sup>h</sup>k/°mər<sup>h</sup>c-* ‘destroying’, *niiānk-* ‘downward’, *pa<sup>h</sup>tiiānk-* ‘toward’, *sūc-* ‘burning’, *usig-* kind of priest, *vāk-/vāc-* ‘voice’, *vīnk-* ‘to the sides’.

**Table 34. Nouns and adjectives. Stems in dental stops (*t, d*).  
Root nouns.**

	<i>t</i> -stems		<i>d</i> -stems		OP
	OAv.	YAv.	OAv.	YAv.	
sg.					
N		°xšnus, °bər³s			
A	xšnütəm	°xšnütəm, °bər³təm	išudəm	pāðəm, sar³ðəm	ðardam
NAn.					
I			vər³dā	°vər³da	
D		°bər³te			
GAbl. (GD)	stütō	astō			ðarda <sup>h</sup>
Abl.		°bər³taṭ			
du.					
NVA		°bər³ta; asta		pāða	
IDabl.				(thematic pāðauue)	(pādaibiyā)
pl.					
N		stütō	išudō		
A		stütō			
NAn.	as°(?)	asti			
I	azd³biš	azd³biš			
Dabl.	°bər³d³biiō			pað³biias° (paṭ.biias°)	
G	stutām	°stūtām; astām		sar³ðām	

*ast-* 'bone', °*bər³t-* 'carrying, riding', *išud-* 'debt(?)', *pāð-* 'foot', *sar³d-/ðar(a)d-* 'year', *stut-* 'praise', *vər³d-* 'growth', *xšnut-* 'satisfaction'.

**Table 35. Nouns and adjectives. Stems in dental stops (*t*).  
*tāt*-stems**

	OAv.	YAv.
sg.		
N	amə³tatātās	ha <sup>u</sup> ruuatās, ha <sup>u</sup> ruuās°
A	amə³tatātātəm	ha <sup>u</sup> ruuatātātəm
I	amə³tatātā	
D	yauuaētā <sup>h</sup> tē	yauuaētātae°
GAbl.	amə³tatātātas°	ha <sup>u</sup> ruuatātō
Abl.		<sup>i</sup> riθiiqstātāṭ
L	amə³tatātā <sup>h</sup> ti	uštātā <sup>h</sup> tiia
du.		
NVA	amə³tatātā, hauruuātā	ha <sup>u</sup> ruuatāta
IDabl.		ha <sup>u</sup> ruuaṭ <sup>h</sup> biia
GL		amə³tātā, ha <sup>u</sup> ruuātā
pl.		
N		uxšiiqstātō
A		uparatātō
G		vaṅhutātām

*amər<sup>ə</sup>tatāt-* ‘fact of not being dead’, *ha<sup>u</sup>ruuatāt-* ‘wholeness’, *‘riθiiqstāt-* ‘fact of dying’, *uparatāt-* ‘superiority’, *uštātāt-* ‘state of having obtained one’s wishes’, *uxšiiqstāt-* ‘state of growing’, *varjhutāt-* a bloody substance, *yauuaētāt-* ‘eternity’.

**Table 36. Nouns and adjectives. Stems in dental stops (t).  
*ant-* and *Hant-*stem adjectives**

YAv.		
sg.		
N	bər <sup>ə</sup> zō	maza
V	bər <sup>ə</sup> za ( <i>Vispered</i> 21.2)	
A	bər <sup>ə</sup> zaṅtəm	mazāṅtəm
NAn.	bər <sup>ə</sup> zaṭ	*mazāṭ
I	bər <sup>ə</sup> zata	
D	bər <sup>ə</sup> za <sup>1</sup> te	
GAbl.	bər <sup>ə</sup> zatō	
L	bər <sup>ə</sup> za <sup>1</sup> ṅtiia	
du.		
NVA	bər <sup>ə</sup> zaṅta	
IDAbl.	bər <sup>ə</sup> zəṅbiia	
pl.		
N	bər <sup>ə</sup> zaṅtō	
G	bər <sup>ə</sup> zaṭəm	

*bər<sup>ə</sup>zaṅt-* ‘high’, *mazāṅt-* ‘great’.

**Table 37. Nouns and adjectives. Stems in dental stops (t).  
*uuant-*, *mant-*stem adjectives**

	<i>uuant-</i> stems OAv.	YAv.	OP	<i>mant-</i> stems YAv.
sg.				
N	drəguuā; θβauuāṣ	druuā; cuuāṣ	tunuvā	xratumā
V		druuō		
A	drəguuāṅtəm	druuāṅtəm	tunuva <sup>n</sup> tam	gaoməṅtəm
NAn.	astuuāṭ			
I	drəguuātā			gaomata
D	drəguuā <sup>1</sup> tē, mauuā <sup>1</sup> tē	astuuā <sup>1</sup> te		vohuma <sup>1</sup> te
GAbl.	drəguuatō	astuuatō	(tunuva <sup>n</sup> tahyā)	ratumatō
Abl.	druuataṭ			
L		astuuā <sup>1</sup> ṅti, cuuā <sup>1</sup> ti		
du.				
NVA		anusauuāṅta		
IDAbl.		cuuāṭbiia		

**Table 37. Nouns and adjectives. Stems in dental stops (t).  
uuant-, mant-stem adjectives (cont.)**

	<i>uuant</i> -stems		<i>mant</i> -stems	
	OAv.	YAv.	OP	YAv.
pl.				
N	drəguuaṅtō	cuuaṅtō		afrašūmaṅtō
A	drəguuatō			
NAn.	miždauuaṅ			
I	drəguuō.d°biš			yātumaṭbiš
DAbI.	drəguuō.d°biio	druuaṭbiio		
G	drəguuaṭam	druuaṭam		yātumaṭam
L	drəguuasū			

*afrašūmaṅt-* 'without forward movement', *astuuaṅt-* 'with bones', *cuuaṅt-* 'how much', *drəguuaṅt-/druuaṅt-* 'possessed by deception', *gaoməṅt-* 'containing milk', *māuuuaṅt-* 'like me', *miždauuaṅt-* 'generating fees', *ratumaṅt-* 'containing (the word) ratu', *tunuvaṅt-* 'mighty', *vohuməṅt-* 'possessing good things', *xratumaṅt-* 'wise', *yātumaṅt-* 'possessed by sorcerers'.

**Table 38. Nouns and adjectives. Stems in dental stops (t).  
Present participles in -ant-**

	Athematic		Thematic	
	OAv.	YAv.	OAv.	YAv.
sg.				
N	haṣ, stauuas		xšaiiaṣ	barō fšuiiaṣ
A	°iiaṅtəm	həṅtəm	fšuiiaṅtəm	barəṅtəm fšuiiaṅtəm
NAn.		haṭ	yasō.xiiōn	x <sup>v</sup> a <sup>r</sup> iiaṅ, maṅaiiən
D		ha <sup>t</sup> e	hanəṅtē, fšuiieṅtē	barəṅte fšuiieṅte, fšuiiaṅtae°
GAbI.		hatō	saošiiiaṅtō	barəṅtō fšuiiaṅtō
Abl.		—		°saocəṅtaṭ ṭbišiiiaṅtaṭ
L		daḍā <sup>t</sup> i (N. 66?)		barəṅti druzaṅti
ḍu.				
NAn.				x <sup>v</sup> a <sup>r</sup> iiaṅti
G (GL)		°uxšaiiaṅtā		
pl.				
N	daṅtō	haṅtō	marəṅtō, afšuiiaṅtō	barəṅtō
A		—	nadəṅtō, juuaṅtō	barəṅtō fšuiiaṅtō
I		haḍbiš		
DAbI.		—		ṭbišiiiaṅbiio
G	hāṭam	hāṭam	saošiiiaṅṭam	barəṅṭam ṭbišiiiaṅṭam
L		fšuiiasū		

*baraṅt-* 'carrying', *(da)daṅt-* 'giving', *druzaṅt-* 'lying', *fšuiiaṅt-* 'shepherd', *hanaṅt-* 'gaining', *haṅt-/hāt-* 'being', *iiaṅt-* 'going', *juuaṅt-* 'living', *marəṅt-* 'remembering', *maṅaiiaṅt-* 'resembling', *nadaṅt-* 'reviling', *yasaxiia-* 'seeking to obtain glory', *saocəṅt-* 'burning', *saošiiiaṅt-* 'who will revi-

talize', *t̥bišiiant-* 'harming', *uxšaiiant-* 'making grow', *xšaiiant-* 'ruling', *x<sup>v</sup>a<sup>r</sup>iiañt* 'tasty(?)'.

**Table 39. Nouns and adjectives. Masc. *h*-stems**

	OAv.	YAv.	OP
sg.			
N	vasâ; °dâ (< °da'â), mâ (< *ma'ah)	°manâ	aspacanâ
V		°manō	
A	°aēnaṇhəm	°manaṇhəm	nāham
I		°manaṇha	
D	hudâṇhē	°manaṇhe	
Abl.		°manaṇhaṭ	
Abl.G	°aojaṇhō; hudâṇhō, māṇg (< *ma'añh)	°manaṇhō, °dāṇhō	
L	manahi		
du.			
NVA	anaocarhā		
G (GL)		°nəmaṇhā	
pl.			
NVA	°varšnaṇhō; hudâṇhō	°manaṇhō	
DAbI.	hudâbiio		

*aēnah-* 'sin', *anaocah-* '?', *aojah-* 'strength', *aspacanh-* proper name, °*dāh-* 'giving . . . gifts', *manah-* 'thought, mind', *māh-* 'moon', *nāh-* 'nose', *nəmah-* 'homage', *varšnah-* 'masculinity', *vasah-* 'doing at will'.

**Table 40. Nouns and adjectives. Neut. *h*-stems**

	OAv.	YAv.	OP
sg.			
NAn.	manō; dâ (< da'ō)	manō	draya, manaš°
I (IAbI.)	āṇhā, manaṇhā	āṇha, manaṇha	manahā
D	aēnaṇhē	manaṇhe	
Abl.		manaṇhō, °dāṇhō	
Abl.G	āṇhō, manaṇhō; dāṇhō, yāṇhō	manaṇhaṭ	
L	θβōi.ahi; yāhi	manahi	drayahayā
du.			
NVA	manahi°		
pl.			
NAn.	manâ	manâ	
I (IAbI.)	vacəbiš	raocəbiš	raucabiš
DAbI.		raocəbiio	
G	yāṇham	manaṇham	
L		azahu, raocōhuua	

*āh-* 'mouth', *qazah-* 'constriction', *dāh-* < \**da'ah-* 'gift', *drayah-* 'ocean', *raocah-/raucah-* 'light', *θβaiiah-* 'fear', *vacah-* 'speech', *yāh-* < \**ya'ah-* 'competition'.

**Table 41. Nouns and adjectives. *iih-* (comparative), *uuah-* stems (perfect participles)**

	OAv.	YAv.	OP	OAv.	YAv.
sg.					
N	spaniiā	spaniiā	tauviya <sup>h</sup>	viduuā	viduuā
V	nā <sup>i</sup> diiāṅhəm				
A		spaniiāṅhəm			°viduuāṅhəm
NAn.	vahiiō				daθušō
D		kasiiāṅhe		viduše	viduše
Abl.G				vidušō	
Abl.					daθušaṭ
du.					
NVA		āsiiāṅha			
pl.					
NVA		masiiāṅhō			viduuāṅhō
NAn.	vaxiiā				
I		staoiiēbiš			dadūzbiš
G		kasiiāṅhəm			vaonušəm
L					zazušu

See the text (§3.4).

**Table 42. Nouns and adjectives. *an-*, *Han-* stems**

	OAv.	YAv.			
sg.					
N	uxšā, kar <sup>a</sup> pā	maθrā		xšapa	mar <sup>a</sup> ta
V					
A			asānəm	xšapanəm	
I					mar <sup>o</sup> θnō
D		maθrānē		xšafne	mar <sup>o</sup> θnaṭ
Abl.G		maθrānō	ašnō	xšafnō	
Abl.			ašnaaṭ <sup>o</sup>	xšafnaaṭ <sup>o</sup>	
pl.					
NV	uxšānō, kar <sup>a</sup> panō	mar <sup>o</sup> tānō	asānō	kar <sup>a</sup> panō, xšapanō	
A	asēnō			xšafnas <sup>o</sup>	
G				karafnəm, xšafnəm	
L				xšapō.huua	

*asan-/ašn-* 'stone, sky', *kar<sup>a</sup>pan-* kind of priest, *mar<sup>o</sup>tān-/mar<sup>o</sup>θn-* 'mixed with death, mortal', *maθrān-* 'holder of the poetic thought', *uxšān-* 'bull', *xšapan-/xšafn-* 'night'.



**Table 43. Nouns and adjectives. *man-*, *uuan-*stems**

	OAv.	YAv.	OP	OAv.	YAv.	OP
sg.						
N	a'riiamā	a'riiama		aṣṣuuā	aṣṣuua	artāvā
V				aṣṣaum		
A		a'riiamanəm	asmānam	aṣṣuuanəm	aṣṣuuanəm	
I	a'riiamnā	a'riiam <sup>a</sup> na				
D		a'riiama <sup>1</sup> ne		aṣṣaunē, aṣṣaunaē <sup>o</sup>	aṣṣaone	
Abl.G	a'riiamanas <sup>o</sup>	a'riiamanō		aṣṣaunō	aṣṣaonō	
Abl.					aṣṣaonaṭ	
L		a'riiama <sup>1</sup> ni			aṣṣauuan <sup>a</sup> iia	
du.						
NVA		rasmana			aṣṣuuana	
G (GL)					aṣṣaonā	
pl.						
NVA				aṣṣuuanō	aṣṣuuanō	
A		rasmanō		aṣṣaunō	aṣṣaonō	
I					aṣṣaonīš	
DAbl.		rasmaoiio		aṣṣauuabiiō	aṣṣauuabiiō, aṣṣuuaoiio	
G				aṣṣaunəm	aṣṣaunəm	

*a'riiama-* 'a deity', *asma-* 'sky', *aṣṣuuan-/artāvā-* 'sustainer of order', *rasman-* 'battle-line'.

**Table 44. Nouns and adjectives. Neut. *man-*stems**

	OAv.	YAv.	OP
sg.			
NAn.	anmā	bar <sup>o</sup> sma	nāmā
I	mazēnā		baršnā
D	anmēnē	<sup>o</sup> cašma <sup>1</sup> ne	
Abl.G	cašmēng	bar <sup>o</sup> sma	
Abl.		bar <sup>o</sup> smən, cašmanaṭ	
L	anmēni, cašma <sup>1</sup> ni, cašman		
du.			
L		cašmanā	
pl.			
NAn.	nāman, afšmāni	nāman	
I		nāmēnīš	
DAbl.	duuānma <sup>1</sup> biias <sup>o</sup>	<sup>u</sup> ruθma <sup>1</sup> biiō	
G	nāmanaṃ	nāmanaṃ	
L		dāmōhu, dāmahuua	

*afšman-* 'rhythm(?)', *anman-* 'breathing', *bar<sup>o</sup>sman-* 'barsom', *bar<sup>o</sup>zan-/baršn-* 'height, depth', *cašman-* 'eye', *dāman-* 'creation', *duuānman-* 'cloud', *mazan-* 'size', *nāman-* 'name', *<sup>u</sup>ruθman-* 'growth'.

**Table 45. Nouns and adjectives. Miscellaneous *n*-stems**

	Root nouns		Miscellaneous <i>nan</i> -stems					
	OAv.	YAv.	OAv.	YAv.				
sg.								
N	°jā	°ja/°jā	uruā	ruua	spā	āθrauuā	y <sup>a</sup> uuā	zruua
V					spānəm	āθraom	yum	
A			uruānəm	ruuānəm		āθrauuānəm	y <sup>a</sup> uuānəm	zruuānəm
D		°yne		rūne				zrūne
Abl.G		°yno/ °janō		rūnō	sūnō	aθa <sup>u</sup> runō		zrū
Abl.		°yṇaṭ					yūnaṭ	
du.								
NVA				spāna				
pl.								
NV		°janō	uruānō	ruuānō				
A		°janō	runas°	rūnō		(aθa <sup>u</sup> runas°)		
I								
D Abl.			uruō <sup>u</sup> biiō	sūnīš				
G		°yṇam		sūnam				

*āθrauuān-/aθa<sup>u</sup>run-* kind of priest, *°jan-/yṇ-* ‘smasher’, *uruān-/rūn-* ‘soul’, *span-/sūn-* ‘dog’, *yuuān-/yūn-* ‘youth’, *zruuān-/zrūn-* ‘time’.

**Table 46. Nouns and adjectives. *r*-stems**

	OAv.	YAv.	OP
sg.			
N	nā; ptā, dug <sup>a</sup> dā; dāta; ātarš	nā; pita, duy <sup>a</sup> ḍa, x <sup>v</sup> aṇha; dāta; ātarš	pitā
V	ātar <sup>a</sup>	nar <sup>a</sup> ; pitar <sup>a</sup> ; dātar <sup>a</sup> ; ātar <sup>a</sup>	
A	narēm; p <sup>a</sup> tarēm;  dātārēm; ātrēm	narēm; pitarēm, duy <sup>a</sup> ḍarēm, x <sup>v</sup> aṇharēm; dātārēm; ātrēm	framātāram
I	āθrā	nara	
D	narōi; f <sup>a</sup> ḍrōi, piθrē; āθrē	na <sup>u</sup> re; f <sup>a</sup> ḍrōi/piθre, brāθre; āθre	
Abl.		nər <sup>a</sup> ṭ	
Abl.G	nər <sup>a</sup> š; āθrō	narš; piθrō, brāθrō; zaotarš;	piça
L		na <sup>u</sup> ri	
du.			
NVA		nara; pitarā, zāmātara(?)	
ID Abl.		nər <sup>a</sup> biia	
G (GL)		narā	
pl.			
NV	narō; mātārō; mar <sup>a</sup> xtārō	narō; p <sup>a</sup> tarō, mātārō; dātārō; ātarō	
A	nəraš; mātəraš°	nəraš, nərāš; f <sup>a</sup> ḍrō, mātəraš°	
D Abl.	nər <sup>a</sup> biias°	nər <sup>a</sup> biiō, nəruiiō; p <sup>a</sup> tar <sup>a</sup> biiō	
G	narām, dug <sup>a</sup> ḍram	narām; duy <sup>a</sup> ḍram, āθram	

*ātar-* ‘fire’, *brātar-* ‘brother’, *dātar-* ‘creator’, *duḡdar-/duyḡdar-* ‘daughter’, *framātar-* ‘commander’, *mātar-* ‘mother’, *nar-* ‘man’, *ptar-* ‘father’, *x<sup>v</sup>arḡhar-* ‘sister’, *zaotar-* ‘libator’, *zāmātar-* ‘brother-in-law’.

**Table 47. Nouns and adjectives. Neut. r/n-stems**

	OAv.	YAv.	OP
sg.			
NAn.	aiiar <sup>ə</sup> , huuar <sup>ə</sup> , rāzar <sup>ə</sup>	aiiar <sup>ə</sup> , huuar <sup>ə</sup> , karšuuar <sup>ə</sup> , ʰruθβarə, baēuuar <sup>ə</sup>	*vazar
I	rašnā		vašnā
Abl.G	x <sup>v</sup> ōṅg (< *huuṅḡh), rāzōṅg	aiiḡ, hū (< *huuṅḡh), *ʰruθβa	
Abl.		ʰruθβən	
L		aiiḡn	
du.			
NVA	sāx <sup>v</sup> ēni(?)		
pl.			
NAn.	aiiār <sup>ə</sup> , sax <sup>v</sup> ār <sup>ə</sup>	aiiḡn(i), karšuuṅ, ʰruθβan, baēuuṅ, baēuuani	
G	rāšnəm	asnəm, baēuuaranəm	
L		karšuuōhu, ʰruθβō.huua	

*aiiar/n-* ‘day’, *\*azar/asn-* ‘day’, *baēuuar/n-* ‘10,000’, *huuar/n-* ‘sun’, *rāzar/n-* ‘ruler(?) (measuring device)’, *sāx<sup>v</sup>ar/n-* ‘instruction(?)’, *karšuuar/n-* ‘content’, *ʰruθβar/n-* ‘intestine’, *\*vazar/vašn-* ‘greatness’.

**Table 48a. Nouns and adjectives. Stems in sibilants**

	s-stems (OP θ-stems)		OP	z-stems	
	OAv.	YAv.		OAv.	YAv.
sg.					
N	—	°darš, spaš		dər <sup>ə</sup> š°, maš	*darš, barəš
V					
A	vīsəm	vīsəm, spasəm			bər <sup>ə</sup> zəm
NAn.					
I (IAbl.)	—	masa, vīsa	viθā°	dər <sup>ə</sup> zā	
D	—	vīse		mazōi	
Abl.G	—	masō, vīsō		mazō	bər <sup>ə</sup> zō
Abl.		visaṭ			
L	—	vīsi, vīsiia	viθiyā	var <sup>ə</sup> zi	
pl.					
NV		spasō			
A		visō			
I (IAbl.)			viθbiš		
DAbl.	viž <sup>v</sup> biiō	vižibiiō			
G		višəm		°uuarəzəm	

*bər<sup>ə</sup>z-* ‘high’, *°biš* ‘healing’, *°dar<sup>ə</sup>s-* ‘seeing’, *dər<sup>ə</sup>z-* ‘chain’, *mas-* ‘large’, *maz-* ‘great’, *spas-* ‘spy’, *var<sup>ə</sup>z-* ‘invigorant’, *vīs-*, *viθ-* ‘town’.

**Table 48b. Nouns and adjectives. Stems in sibilants**

š-stems			
	OAv.	YAv.	OP
sg.			
N	°biš		
A	išəm		
NAn.	təuuiš	viš, sna <sup>i</sup> θiš, ar <sup>ə</sup> duš	hadiš
I	sna <sup>i</sup> θiša	sna <sup>i</sup> θiša, ar <sup>ə</sup> duša	
D		°t̥biše	
Abl.G	išō	hadišas°	
Abl.		ar <sup>ə</sup> dušaṭ	
du.			
IDAbl.		sna <sup>i</sup> θižbiia	
pl.			
NA	°išō		
G		°gūšam, sna <sup>i</sup> θišam, ar <sup>ə</sup> dušam	

*arəduš* a degree of sin, *gūš* 'listening (to)', *hadiš* 'homestead, seat', *°iš-* 'seeking', *iš-* kind of ritual offering, *sna<sup>i</sup>θiš* 'blow', *təuuiš* 'violence(?)', *°t̥biš* 'harming', *viš* 'poison'.

**Table 49. Personal pronouns. 1st person**

	OAv. tonic; enclitic	YAv. tonic; enclitic	OP tonic; enclitic
sg.			
N	azəm	azəm	adam
A	—; mā	mam; mā	mām; -mā
D	ma <sup>i</sup> biiā, ma <sup>i</sup> biiō; mōi	māuuōiia; mē	
Abl. (IAbl.)	maṭ	maṭ	—; -ma
G (GD)	—; mōi	mana; mē	manā; -mai
L	mōi(?)		
du.			
NVA	vā(?)		
pl.			
NV	vaēm	vaēm	vayam
A	ahmā; nā	—; nō	
I	āhmā		
D	ahma <sup>i</sup> biiā; nā	—; nō	
Abl.	ahmaṭ		
G (GD)	—; nā	ahmākəm; nō	amāxam

**Table 50. Personal pronouns. 2nd person**

	OAv. tonic; enclitic	YAv. tonic; enclitic	OP tonic; enclitic
sg.			
N	tuuēm; tū	tūm	tuvam
V		tū	
A	θβam; θβā	θβam; θβā	θuvām
I		θβā	
D	ta <sup>h</sup> biiō; tōi	—; tē	
G	tauuā; tōi	tauuā; tē	
Abl.	θβαϑ	θβαϑ	
L	θβōi (Y 48.8?)		
du.			
NVA		yuuuākəm	
pl.			
NV	yūžəm; yūš	yūžəm	
A	—; vā	—; vō	
I	xšmā		
D	yūšma <sup>h</sup> biiā; vā	yūšmaoiō; vō	
	xšma <sup>h</sup> biiā	xšmāuuōia	
G	—; vā	yūšmākəm; vō	
Abl.	yūšmaϑ, xšmaϑ	yūšmaϑ	

**Table 51a. Personal pronouns: 3rd person weak deictic *ha-/ta-***

	OAv. masc., neut.	fem.	YAv. masc., neut.	fem.
sg.				
N		hā	hō	hā
A	tēm	ṭam	təm	ṭam
NAn.	taϑ		taϑ	
I	tā			
du.				
NA	tā		tā	
NAn.			tē	
pl.				
N	tōi	tā	tē, tae°	tā
NAn.	tā		tā	
A	tōng			
I	tāiš		tāiš	

**Table 51b. Personal pronouns: 3rd person *i-*, *hi-/ši-*, YAv./OP *di-***

	OAv.		YAv.		OP
	masc., neut.	fem.	masc., neut.	fem.	masc.
sg.					
N		hī			-šim, -dim
A	im	hīm	īm, dim	dim	
NAn.	iṭ		īṭ, dīṭ		-diy
I (I Abl.)					-šim (!)
GD	hōi	hōi	hē, šē	hē, šē	-šaiy
du.					
NVA		hī			
NAn.	hī				
pl.					
A	iš	hiš	dīš	dīš	šīš, -dīš
NAn.	i				
G					-šām

**Table 52. Near-deictic demonstrative pronoun *a-/ima***

	OAv.		YAv.		OP	
	masc., neut.	fem.	masc., neut.	fem.	masc., neut.	fem.
sg.						
N	aiiēm	im (< *ijam) (Y 45.3?)	aēm	īm	iyam	iyam
A		imam	imēm	imam	imam	imām
NAn.	imaṭ		imaṭ		ima	
I		ōiia (< *aiiā)	ana	aia	anā	
D	ahmāi	aḫiiāi	ahmāi	aṛhāi		
Abl.	ahmāṭ		ahmāṭ	aṛhāṭ		
G (GD)	ahiiā		aṛhe, ahe	aṛhā		ahayāyā
L	ahmi		ahmi, ahmiia	aṛhe (< -iā)		
du.						
NVA			ima			
NAn.						
ID Abl.		ābiia		ābiia		
G	ās°, aiiā		aiiā			
pl.						
N (NA)			ime	imā	imaiy	
A			ima			
NAn.	imā		ima		imā	
I (I Abl.)	āiš	ābiš	āiš	ābiš	imaibiš	
DAbl.	aē <sup>l</sup> biio	a <sup>l</sup> biias°	aē <sup>l</sup> biio	ābio		
G (GD)	aēšam		aēšam	āṛham	imaišam	
L		āhū	aēšu, aēšuuā	āhuuā		

**Table 53. Far-deictic demonstrative pronoun *hau-/aua-***

	OAv.		YAv.		OP	
	masc., neut.	fem.	masc., neut.	fem.	masc., neut.	fem.
sg.						
N	hūuō <sup>a</sup>	hā	hūuō, hāu	hūuō, hāu	hauv	hauv
A	*auuōm	auuam	aom	auuam	avam	avām
NAn.	auuāt		auuāt		ava, avaš <sup>o</sup>	
I (I Abl.)	auuā		auua		avanā	
D				auuaṛhāi		
Abl.				auuaṛhāt		
G (GD)			auuaṛhe	auuaṛhā	avahayā	
du.						
NVA					*avā	
G	auuā					
pl.						
N (NA)			auue	auuā	avaiy	*avā
A			auuū, aū			
NAn.			auua		avā	
I	auuāiš		auuāiš			
D Abl.				auuabiio		
G	auuaešam		auuaešam		avaišam	

a. On *hūuō*, *ana-* see §3.6.

**Table 54. Relative pronouns**

	OAv.		YAv.		OP	
	masc., neut.	fem.	masc., neut.	fem.	masc., neut.	fem.
sg.						
N (NA)	yō	yā	yō	yā	haya	hayā
A	yōm, yim	yam	yim	yam	tayam	tayām
NAn.	hiiaṭ		yaṭ		taya	
I	yā		yā		tayanā	
D	yahmāi		yahmāi			
Abl.			yahmāt	yeṛhāt		
G	yehiiā		yeṛhe	yeṛhā		
L	yahmī		yahmi, yahmiia	yeṛhe		
du.						
NVA	yā		yā	yōi	tayā	
G	yaiiā		yaiiā			
pl.						
N (NA)	yōi	yā	yōi, yaē <sup>o</sup>	yā	tayaiy	tayā
A	yōng		yā			
NAn.	yā		yā	tayā		
I	yāiš			yāiš		
D Abl.	yaē <sup>b</sup> biio		yaē <sup>b</sup> biio	yābiio		
G	yaēšam		yaēšam	yāṛham	tayaišam	
L	yaēšū		yaēšu	yāhu, yāhuua		

**Table 55. Interrogative and indefinite pronouns**

	OAv. masc., neut.	fem.	YAv. masc., neut.	fem.	OP masc., neut.	fem.
sg.						
N	kā, kas°, ciš	kā	kō, ciš	kā	kā, kaš°	ciš°
A	kəm, °cīm	ḳam	kəm, cim	ḳam		
NAn.	kaṭ, °ciṭ		kaṭ, ciṭ		(°ciy)	
I	kā		kā, kana			
D	kaḥmāi		kaḥmāi	kaṛḥāi		
Abl.			kaḥmāt			
G	kaḥiiā, caḥiiā		kahe	kaṛḥā		
L		kaḥiiā°	kaḥmi, caḥmi	kaṛḥe		
pl.						
N	kōi, caiias°		kōi, caiiō			
A	kōṅg		kā°			
NAn.	ci°		kāiš			
I			kaē <sup>b</sup> biiō			
DAbl.	kaē <sup>b</sup> biiō		kaṛḥam			
G						